

# **2012 ZDX**

## **Owner's Manual**

### **(Unlinked)**

This document does not contain hyperlinks and may be formatted for printing instead of web use. This is due to changes in content and specifications of the vehicle that happen throughout the model year. This manual will be replaced with a hyperlinked version at the end of the model year.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

#### **Safe Driving P. 21**

For Safe Driving P. 22      Seat Belts P. 27      Airbags P. 35

#### **Instrument Panel P. 67**

Indicators P. 68      Gauges and Multi-Information Display P. 87

#### **Controls P. 101**

Setting the Clock P. 102      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 103  
Opening and Closing the Panoramic Glass Roof P. 126  
Adjusting the Seats P. 143

#### **Features P. 167**

Audio System P. 168      Audio System Basic Operation P. 171  
General Information on the Audio System P. 191  
*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® P. 197

#### **Driving P. 209**

Before Driving P. 210      Towing a Trailer P. 215  
Rearview Camera P. 262      Refueling P. 263      Fuel Economy P. 266

#### **Maintenance P. 269**

Before Performing Maintenance P. 270      Maintenance Minder™ P. 273  
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 298  
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 312

#### **Handling the Unexpected P. 317**

Tools P. 318      If a Tire Goes Flat P. 319  
Overheating P. 332      Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 334  
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 346

#### **Information P. 349**

Specifications P. 350      Identification Numbers P. 351  
Emissions Testing P. 354      Warranty Coverages P. 356

# Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 2

Safe Driving P. 21

Instrument Panel P. 67

Controls P. 101

Features P. 167

Driving P. 209

Maintenance P. 269

Handling the Unexpected P. 317

Information P. 349

Index P. 361

Child Safety P. 50

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 64

Safety Labels P. 65

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 114  
Security System P. 120  
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 127  
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 151

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 123  
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 141  
Climate Control System P. 163

Audio Error Messages P. 188  
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver P. 195

Audio Remote Controls P. 190

When Driving P. 223  
Accessories and Modifications P. 267

Braking P. 253

Parking Your Vehicle P. 261

Maintenance Under the Hood P. 277  
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 300  
Cleaning P. 313

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 291  
Battery P. 309

Remote Transmitter Care P. 310

Engine Does Not Start P. 326  
Fuses P. 338  
When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate P. 347

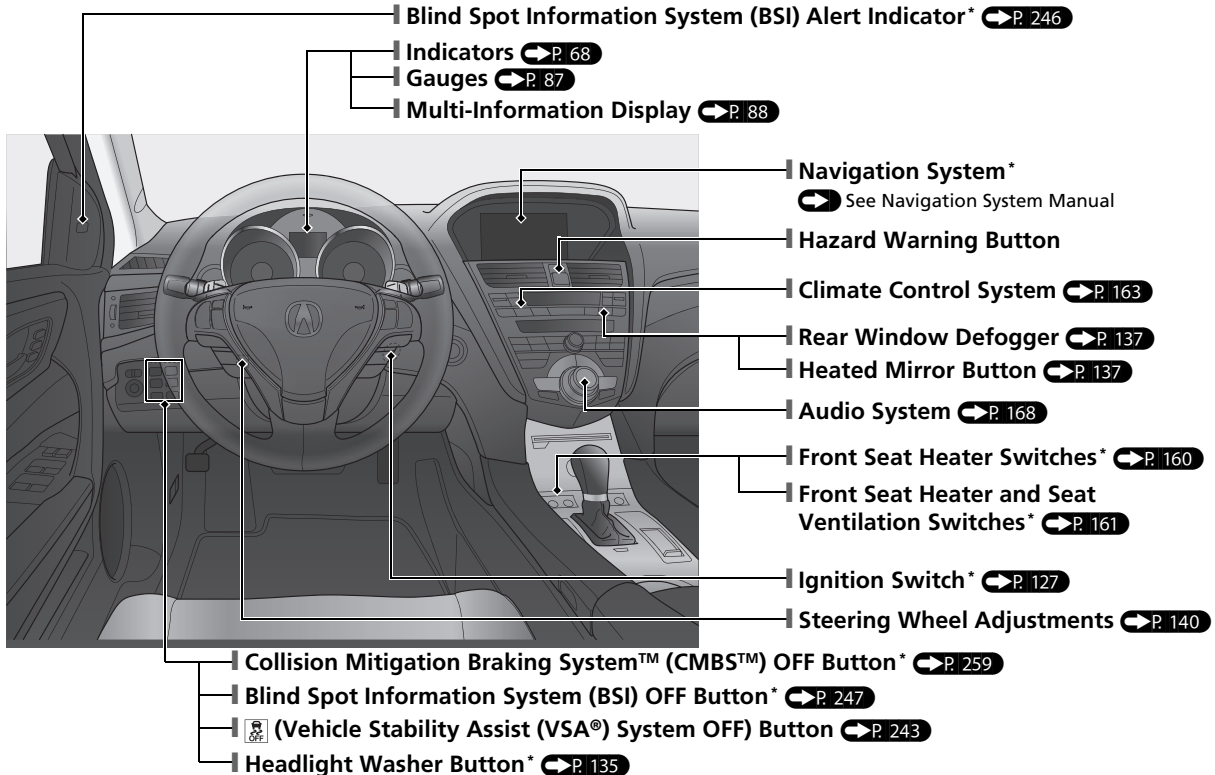
Jump Starting P. 329  
Emergency Towing P. 344

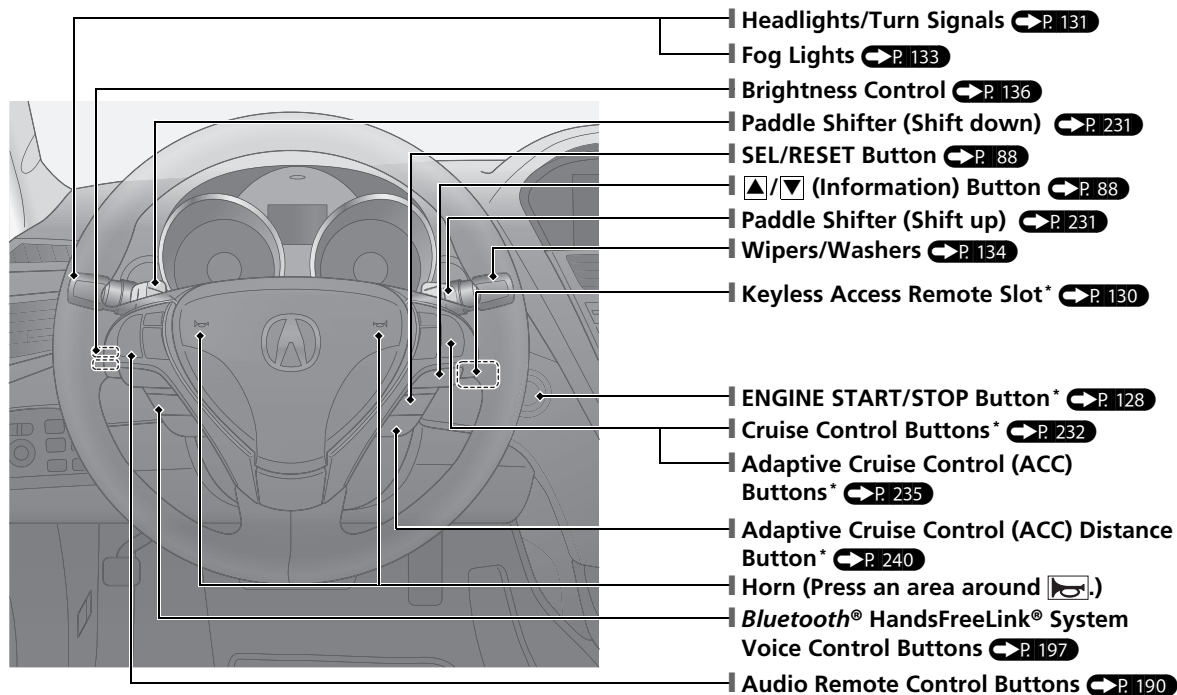
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 331

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 352  
Authorized Manuals P. 358

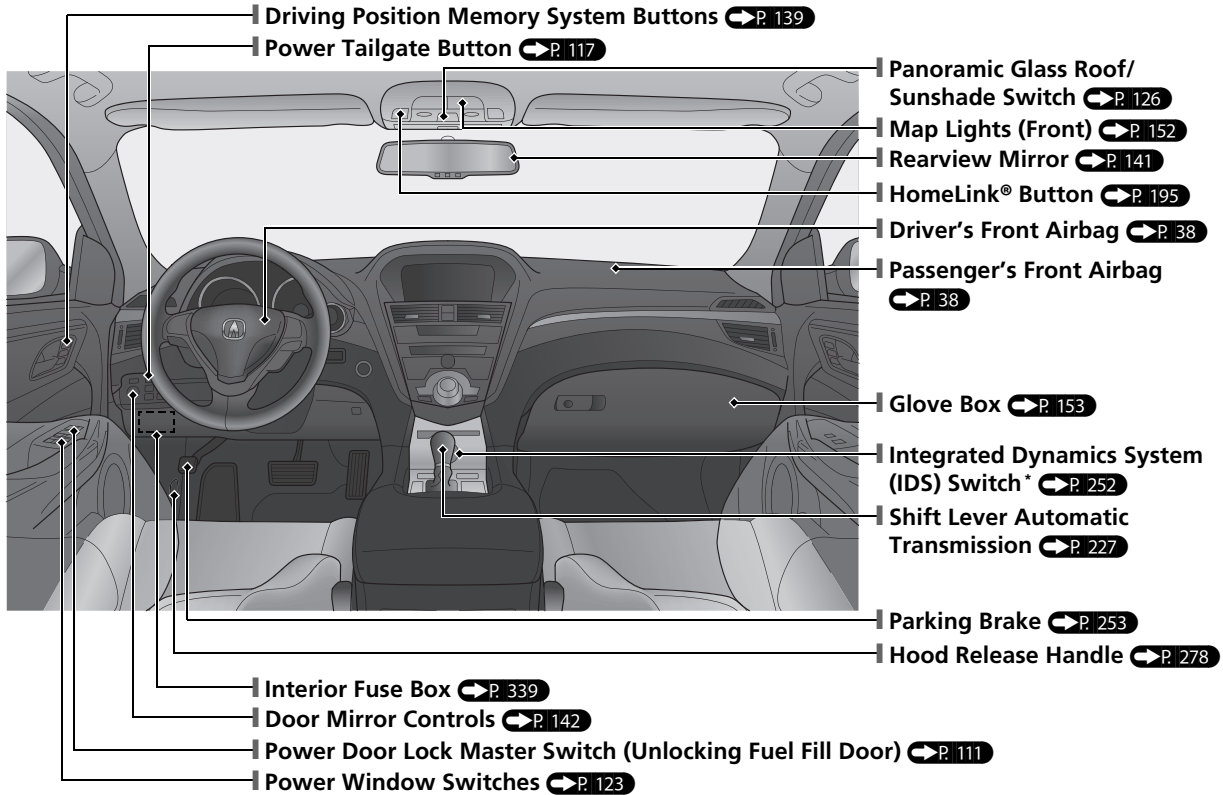
Reporting Safety Defects P. 353  
Client Service Information P. 359

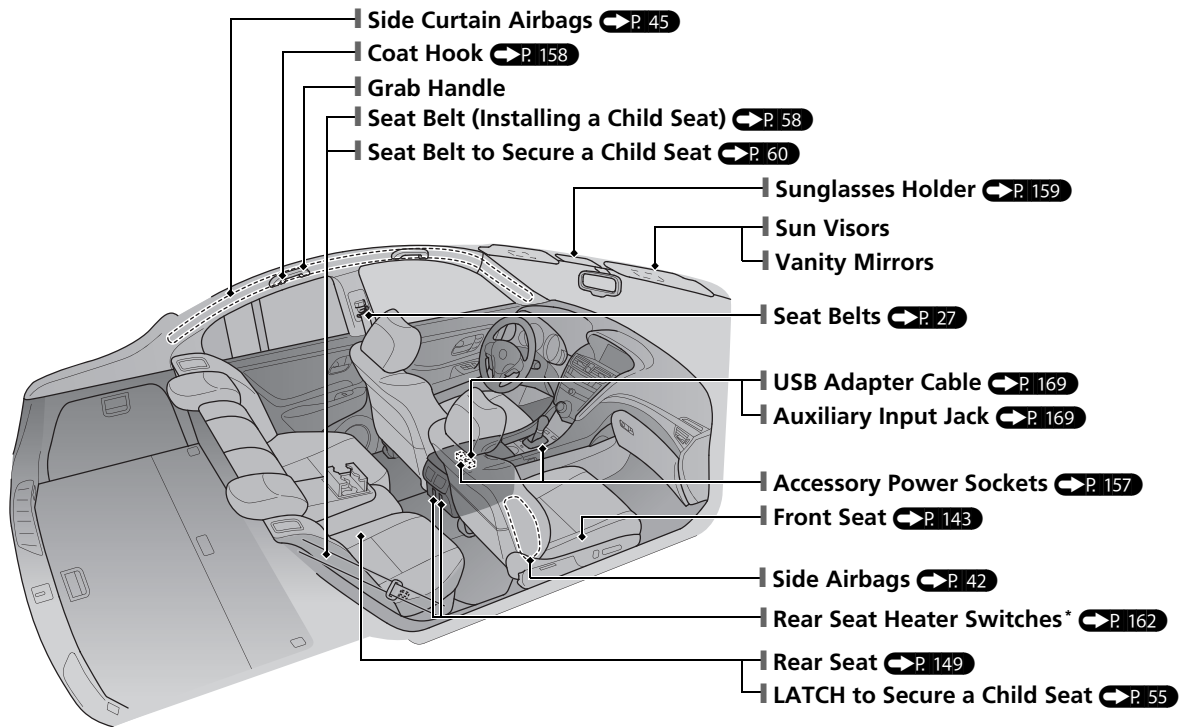
# Visual Index



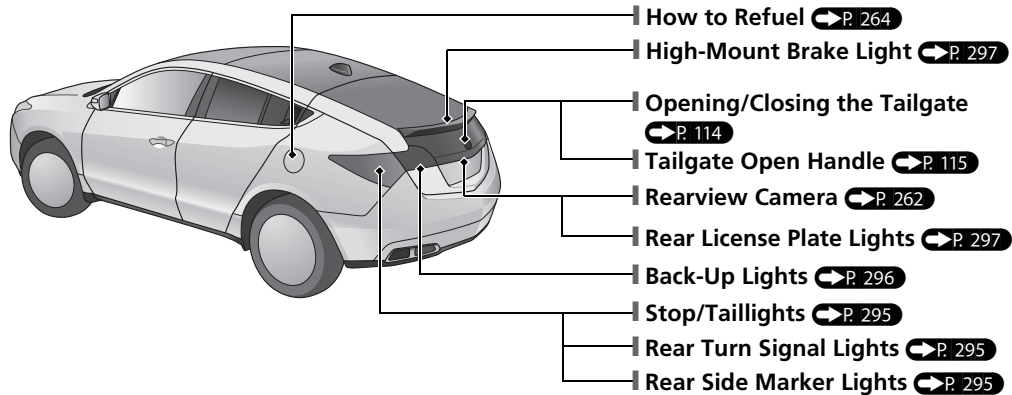
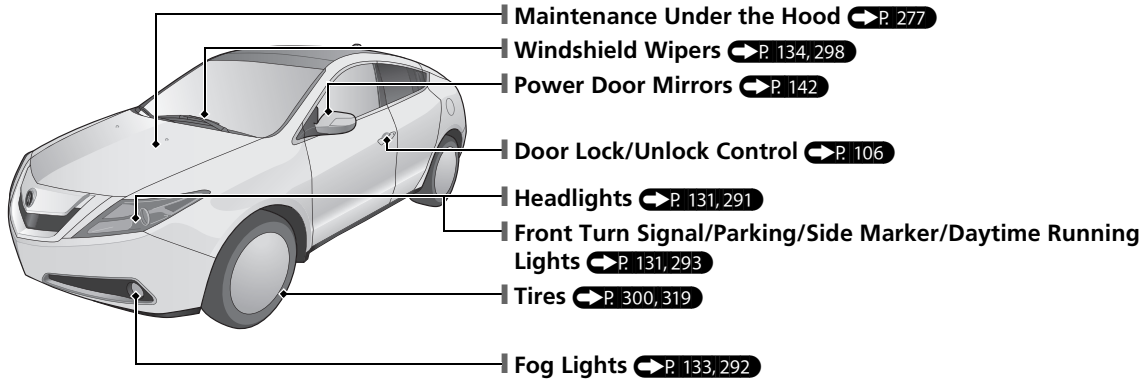


# Visual Index





# Visual Index





# Safe Driving P. 21

## Airbags P. 35

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety P. 50

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 64

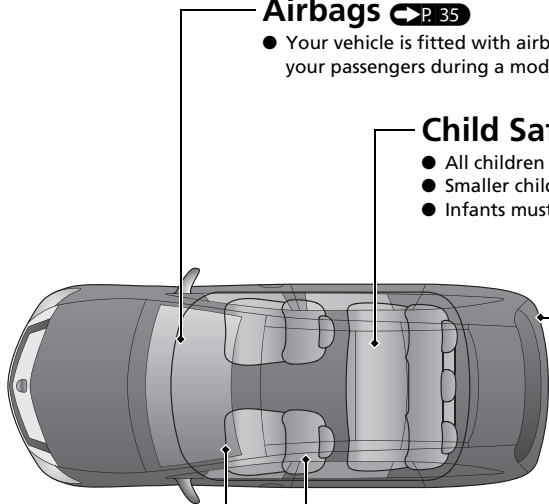
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts P. 27

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist P. 26

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.










Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel P. 67




## Gauges P. 87 / Multi-Information Display P. 88 /

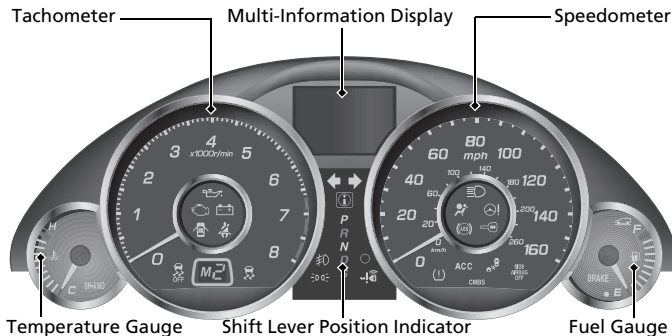
### System Indicators P. 68

#### System Indicators










-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  System Message Indicator
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Door and Tailgate Open Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

#### Lights Reminders













-  Lights On Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator



#### System Indicators

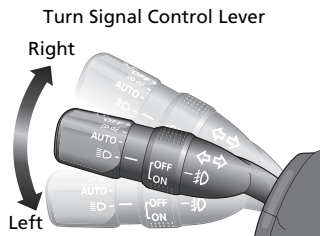
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  Electronically Controlled Power Steering System (ECPS) Indicator\*
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Active Damper System Indicator\*
-  SIDE AIRBAG OFF U.S. Side Airbag Off Indicator
-  Canada Side Airbag Off Indicator
-  BRAKE U.S. Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
-  Canada Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

#### System Indicators

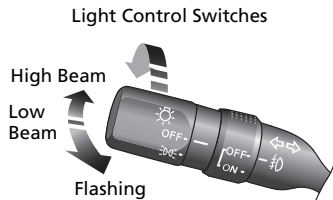
- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> SH-AWD SH-AWD Indicator</li> <li> VSA® OFF Indicator</li> <li> Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Security System Indicator</li> <li> Keyless Access System Indicator*</li> <li> Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> ACC Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator*</li> <li> Blind Spot Information Indicator*</li> <li> CMBS Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*</li> </ul> |
|   |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> CRUISE MAIN Cruise Main Indicator*</li> <li> CRUISE CONTROL Cruise Control Indicator*</li> <li> Low Fuel Indicator</li> </ul>  |

# Controls P. 101

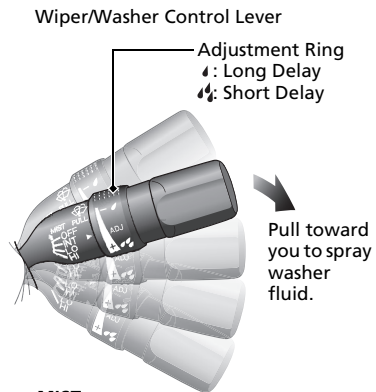
## Turn Signals P. 131



## Lights P. 131



## Wipers and Washers P. 134



**MIST**

**OFF**

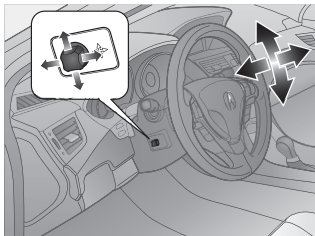
**INT:** Low speed with intermittent

**LO:** Low speed wipe

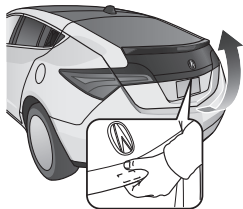
**HI:** High speed wipe

## Steering Wheel P. 140

- To adjust, push and hold the adjustment switch to move the steering wheel to the desired position.




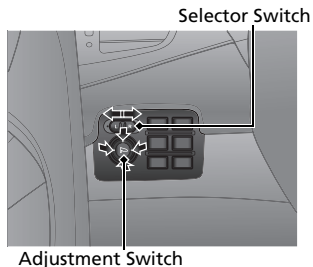
## Tailgate P. 114



- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate release button on the tailgate to open it.
- Press the power tailgate button on the instrument panel or the remote transmitter to open and close the power tailgate.


## Power Door Mirrors P. 142

- With the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.

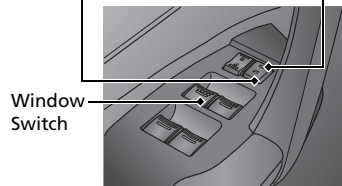


- Place the selector switch in the L or R position to use the reverse tilt door mirror feature.

## Power Windows P. 123

- With the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the OFF position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator is on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

Power Window Lock Button      Indicator



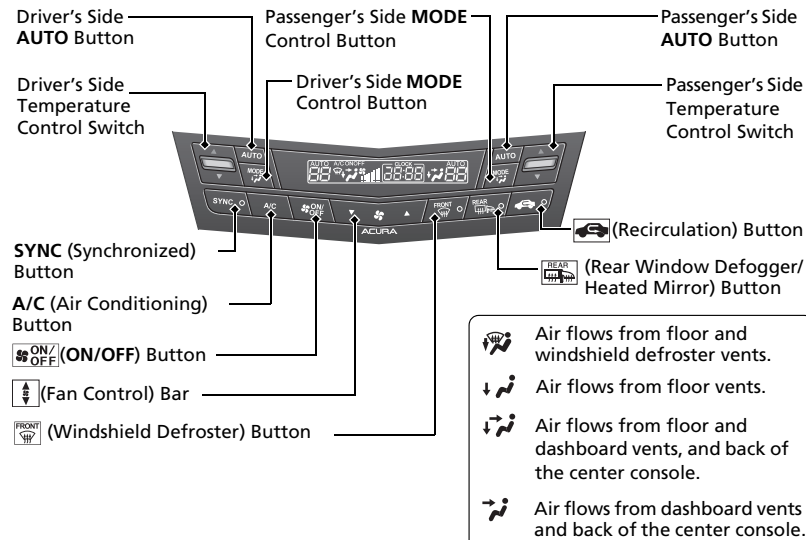
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Climate Control System P. 163

- Press the driver's or passenger's **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the button to defrost the windshield.

### Models with navigation system

The climate control system is voice operable. See the navigation system manual for complete details.



## Clock P. 102

### Models without navigation system



- 1 Press the **SETUP** button.
- 2 Turn the selector knob to select **CLOCK ADJUST**, then press the knob.
- 3 Turn the selector knob to select the clock display setting, hours, or minutes, then press the knob.
- 4 Turn the selector knob to change the clock display setting, hours, or minutes, then press the knob.
- 5 Select Set with the selector knob, then press the knob to complete clock adjustment.

### Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

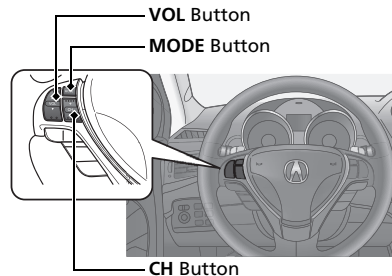
# Features P. 167



## Audio system P. 168

For navigation system operation  See Navigation System Manual



### ● Audio Remote Controls P. 190



- **VOL (Volume) Button**  
Press / to adjust the volume up/down.
- **MODE Button**  
Press and release to change the audio mode: **FM1/FM2/AM/XM1/XM2/CD/AUX.**
- **CH (Channel) Button**  
Radio: Press and release to change the preset station.  
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.  
CD/USB device:  
Press and release to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder.

# Driving ▶ P. 209

## Automatic Transmission ▶ P. 227

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

### ● Shifting

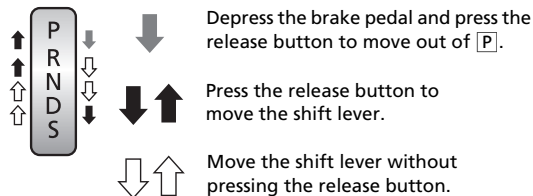
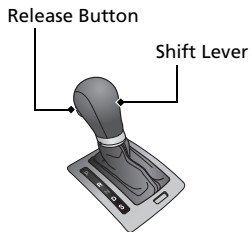
**P** **Park**  
Turn off or start the engine.  
Transmission is locked.

**R** **Reverse**

**N** **Neutral**  
Transmission is not locked.

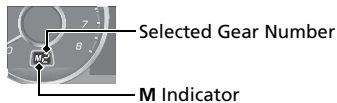
**D** **Drive**  
Normal driving. D-paddle shift mode can be used.

**S** **S Position**  
Sequential shift mode can be used.

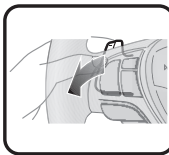


### Paddle Shifters ▶ P. 230

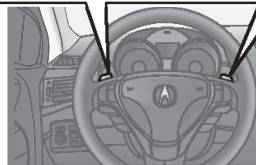
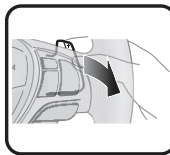
- Paddle shifters allow you to shift gears much like a manual transmission (1st through 6th). This is useful for engine braking.
- D-paddle shift mode: The transmission will shift back to automatic mode once the system detects that the vehicle is cruising.
- Sequential shift mode: Holds the selected gear, and the **M** indicator comes on.



Shift Down **-**  
Paddle Shifter



Shift Up **+**  
Paddle Shifter



## VSA® OFF Button P. 244

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To turn VSA® on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control P. 232

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **DECEL/SET** button once you have received the desired speed (above 25 mph or 40 km/h).

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 248

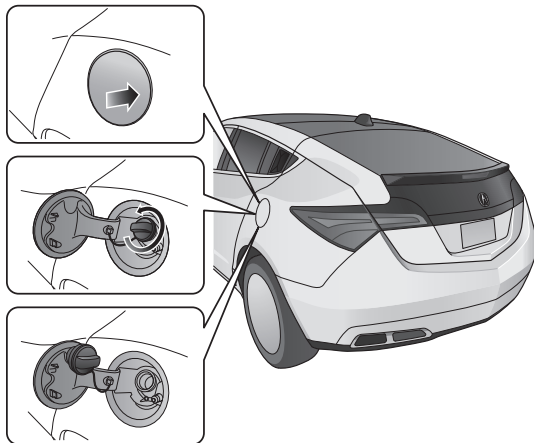
- TPMS monitors tire pressure.
- TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.

## Refueling P. 263

**Fuel recommendation:** Premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number 91 or higher required

**Fuel tank capacity:** 21.00 US gal (79.5 L)

- 1 Unlock the driver's door.
- 2 Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
- 3 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 4 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 5 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



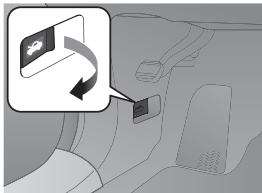


# Maintenance [↔ P. 269](#)

## Under the Hood [↔ P. 277](#)

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery regularly.

- 1** Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



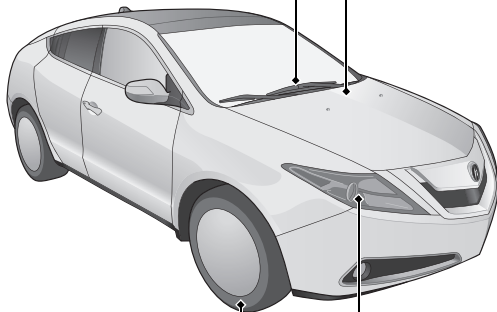
- 2** Locate the hood latch lever, pull the lever up, and lift up the hood.



- 3** When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades [↔ P. 298](#)

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



## Tires [↔ P. 300](#)

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

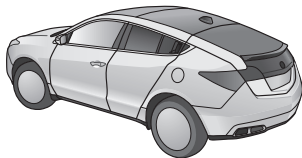
## Lights [↔ P. 291](#)

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected ➔ P. 317

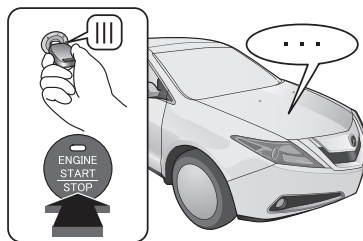
## Flat Tire ➔ P. 319

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire located under the cargo area.



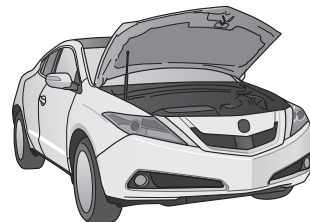
## Engine Won't Start ➔ P. 326

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



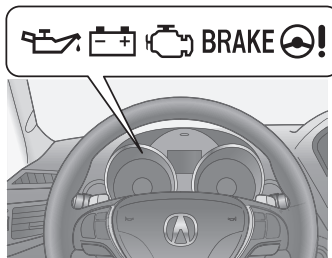
## Overheating ➔ P. 332

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.



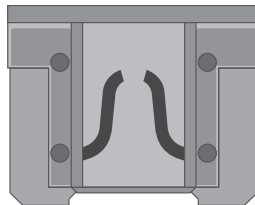
## Indicators Come On ➔ P. 334

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



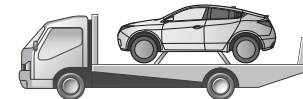
## Blown Fuse ➔ P. 343

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing ➔ P. 344

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**\*1. Why?

- A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
  - Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.
  - Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\* at the same time.



**Q** The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0**\*1 and I cannot remove the key. Why?

- A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.

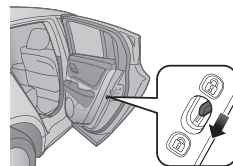


**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

- A** This can occur when the ABS activates, and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

- A** Check if the childproof lock is in the LOCK position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, push the lever to the UNLOCK position.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors using a remote transmitter?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The key is left in the ignition switch.
- The exterior lights are left on.
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

---

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

---

**Q** Is it possible to use unleaded gasoline with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 87 or higher on this vehicle?

**A** If premium unleaded gasoline with a PON of 91 or higher is not available, you can temporarily use the gasoline with a PON of 87 or higher. This will result in decreased engine performance, and can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine. Unleaded gasoline with a PON of 91 or higher is required. The long-term use of a lower PON gasoline can lead to engine damage.

---

## California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### Event Data Recorders

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR).**

The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

### Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

### California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/)

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

## A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

### **DANGER**

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

### **WARNING**

You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

### **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

<b>For Safe Driving</b>		
Important Safety Precautions .....	22	
Important Handling Information.....	24	
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	25	
<b>Seat Belts</b>		
About Your Seat Belts.....	27	
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	31	
Seat Belt Inspection.....	34	
<b>Airbags</b>		
Airbag System Components.....	35	
Types of Airbags .....	38	
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	38	
Side Airbags .....	42	
Side Curtain Airbags.....	45	
Airbag System Indicators.....	46	
Airbag Care .....	49	
<b>Child Safety</b>		
Protecting Child Passengers .....	50	
Safety of Infants and Small Children .....	52	
Safety of Larger Children .....	62	
<b>Exhaust Gas Hazard</b>		
Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	64	
<b>Safety Labels</b>		
Label Locations .....	65	

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.



■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

## Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-highway driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher center gravity making it more susceptible to tripping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

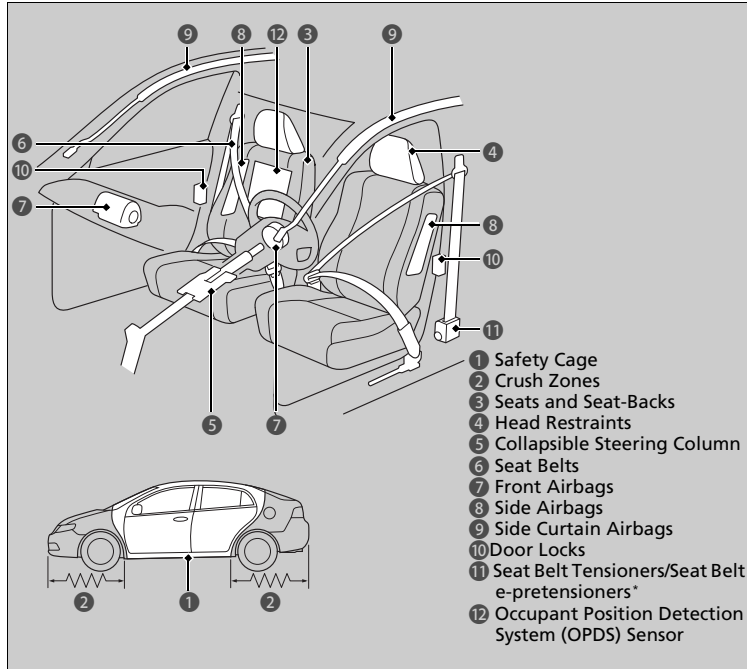
### Important Handling Information

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a roll over.

► **Precautions While Driving** P. 226

► **Off-Highway Driving Guidelines** P. 220

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

### ▣ Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

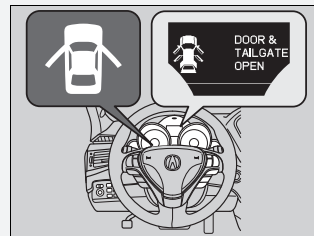
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the tailgate helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the tailgate.
  - **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 111
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 143
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 145
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 31
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 50

## ☒ Safety Checklist

If the door and tailgate open indicator is on, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the indicator goes off.

➤ **Door and Tailgate Open Indicator** P. 73



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body. The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

🔗 **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 58

### 🔗 About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

### ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduces the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

### ■ Seat Belt Reminder



Your vehicle monitors front seat belt use. If the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1 before the driver's seat belt is fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. If the driver does not fasten the belt before the beeper stops, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will also periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ⊗ About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

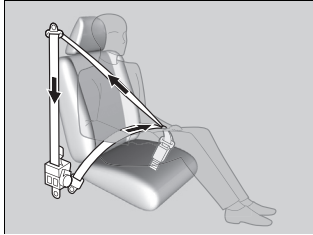
### ⊗ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1. When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator will not come on. This is because the weight sensors in the seat cannot detect their presence.

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

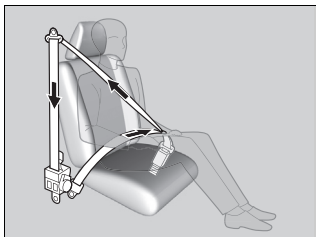


### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

### Seat Belt e-pretensioners\*



Vehicles equipped with CMBS™ also have seat belt e-pretensioners in the front seats that automatically start to retract if your vehicle gets too close to another vehicle in front of you. They begin with a light tug to alert the driver, then tighten if the system detects that your vehicle may collide with the vehicle in front of you. The e-pretensioners will release if a collision is avoided.

➤ **CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\*** P. 257

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 256

### ➤ Seat Belt e-pretensioners\*

If the automatic seat belt tensioners are activated during a collision, both of the front seat belt assemblies and all related components must be replaced.

➤ **Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners** P. 29

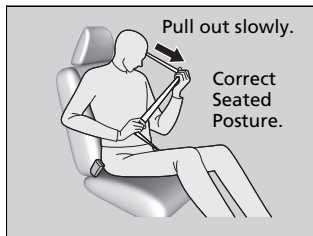
The front passengers e-pretensioner does not activate when the passengers front airbag is automatically turned off.



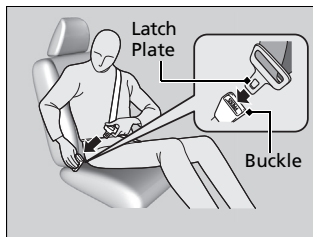
## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

▣ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 143



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ⊗ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

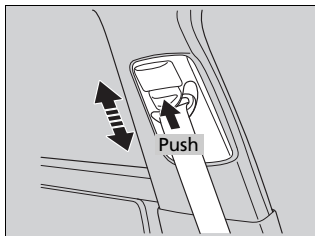
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

### Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

### Fastening a Seat Belt

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red PRESS button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely. When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

### Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

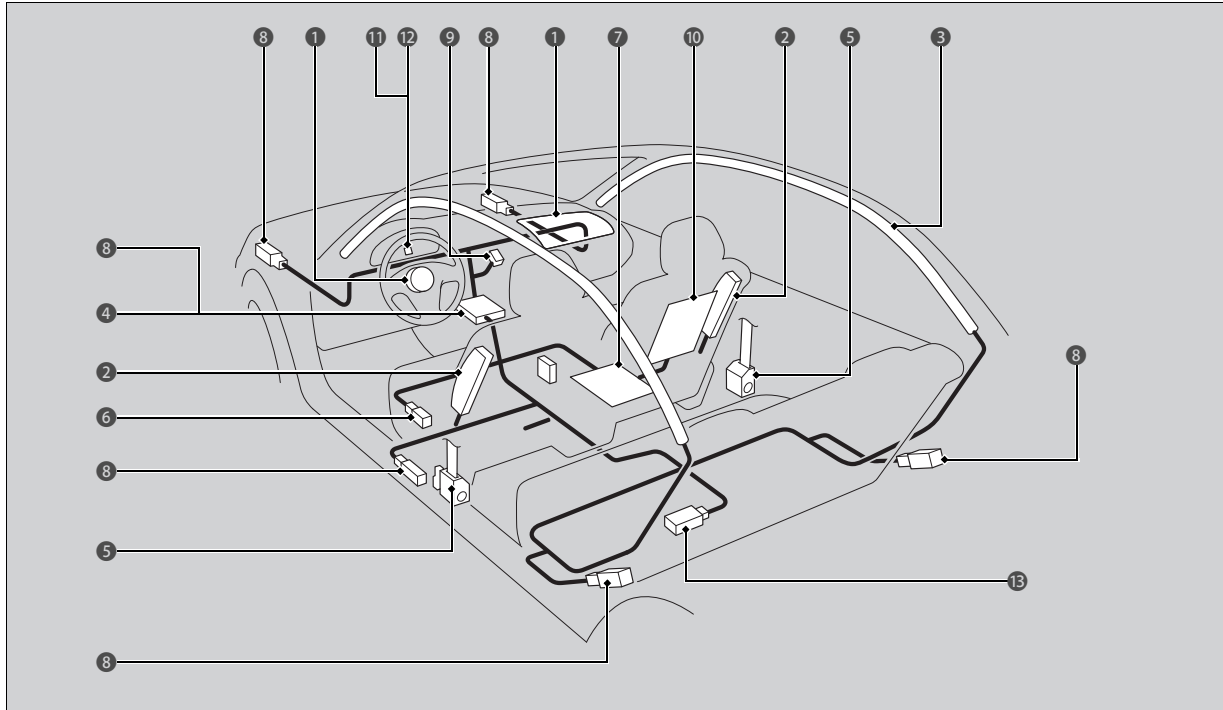
Seat Belt Inspection

### **WARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

## Airbag System Components



Safe Driving

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- 1 Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- 2 Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- 3 Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

4 An electronic control unit that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

5 Automatic front seat belt tensioners. The driver's and front passenger's seat belts incorporate sensors that detect whether or not they are fastened.

**Models with CMBS™**

The front seat belt tensioners also include the e-pretensioners.

6 A driver's seat position sensor. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force.

7 Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The front passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).

8 Impact sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact, side impact, or if your vehicle is about to rollover.

9 An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

10 Sensors that can detect if a child or small statured adult is in the deployment path of the front passenger's side airbag.

11 An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

12 An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the front passenger's side airbag has been turned off.

13 Safing Sensor

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Important facts about your airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

### Important facts about your airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate to severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

#### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked SRS AIRBAG.

#### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON **[II]**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

#### Front Airbags (SRS)

##### Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS).

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

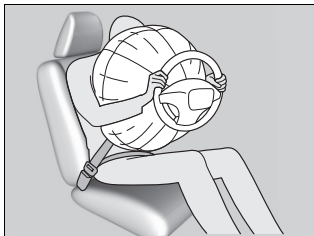


## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work

After a front airbag inflates in a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and, in vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side airbags and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

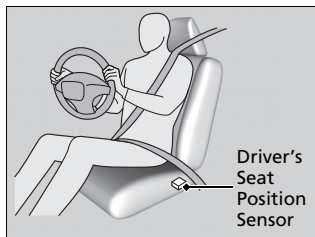
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

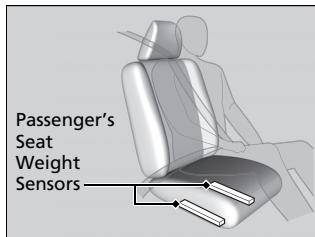
## Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

If the seat is too far forward, the airbag inflates with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors.

Although Acura recommends against carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of a child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn off the passenger's front airbag.

## Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on and the airbag will inflate with full (normal) force, regardless of the driver's seating position.

For both advanced front airbags to work properly:

- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not place any cover over the passenger side dashboard.

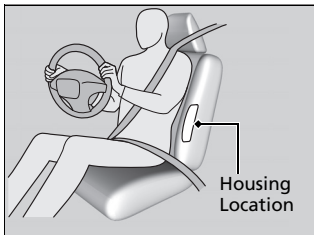
Make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.

▶ **Floor Mats** P. 314

## Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

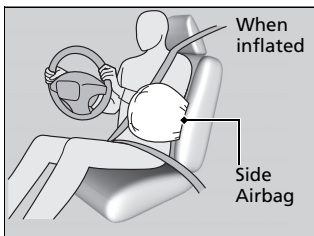
### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

If the impact is on the passenger side, the airbag may not deploy if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

**■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

**■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe**

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## Side Airbag Cutoff System

To reduce the likelihood that a front passenger may be injured by an inflating side airbag, the passenger side airbag is automatically turned off when:

- The height sensors detect a child or short-statured adult is seated in the front passenger seat.
- The position sensor detects that the front passenger is leaning into the deployment path of the side airbag.

When the side airbag cutoff system is activated, the side airbag off indicator comes on.

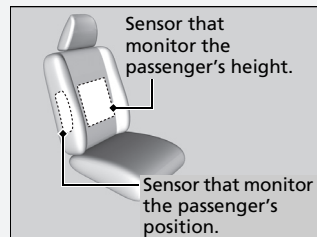
➤ **Side Airbag Off Indicator** P. 48

## Side Airbag Off Indicator

If the side airbag off indicator comes on, have the passenger sit upright. A few seconds after the passenger is sitting properly, the side airbag will automatically be turned on, and the indicator will go off.

If the front passenger is a child, stop when it is safe to do so, and have the child sit properly restrained in a rear seat.

## Side Airbag Cutoff System



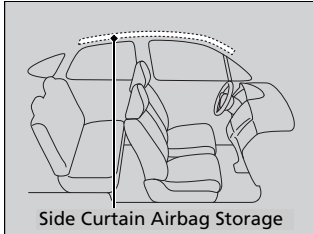
The sensors that monitor the front passenger's height and body position may not work if:

- The seat-back is wet
- The passenger is touching a metal or other electrical conductive object
- A seat cushion is on the seat
- The passenger is wearing excessively thick clothing

## Side Curtain Airbags

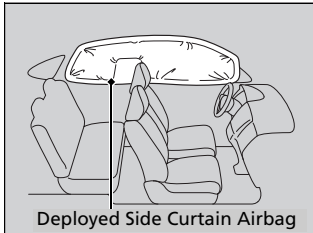
The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact or rollover.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact or rollover.

### When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

In this case, the side curtain airbags will deploy slightly after the front airbags.

### Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

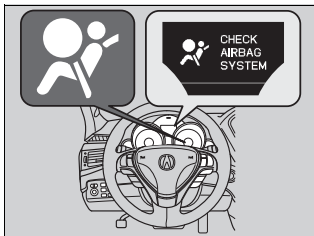
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

If the impact is on the passenger side, the side curtain airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

### SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator



#### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator

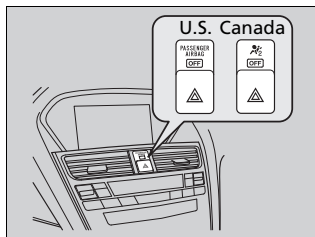
#### **WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.



## Passenger Airbag Off Indicator



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the front passenger's weight sensors detect 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Infants and small children should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.

📖 **Child Safety** P. 50

Objects placed on the seat can also cause the indicator to come on.

If the front passenger seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will not come on.

### 📖 Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

If the indicator comes on with no front passenger and no objects on the passenger's seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Such as:

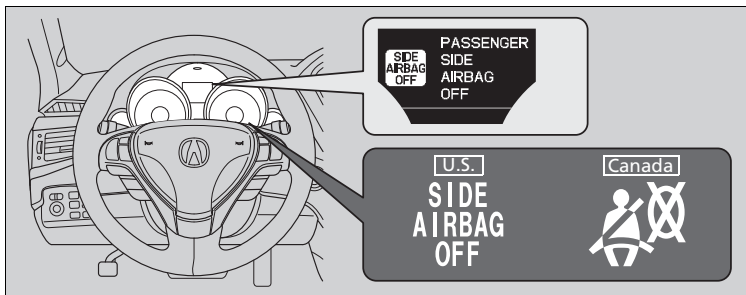
- An object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- A child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- An object placed under the front passenger's seat.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and goes off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

## Side Airbag Off Indicator

### When the side airbag off indicator comes on



This indicator comes on if the passenger's side airbag has been turned off because the passenger is too small to be sitting in the front seat, is slouching or not sitting upright, or has leaned into the airbag's deployment path.

Unless the passenger is a smaller statured adult or a child, the indicator should go off when the passenger returns to a proper upright sitting position.

### Side Airbag Off Indicator

When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>, the indicator should come on for a few seconds and then go out. If it doesn't come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable the driver's seat position sensor or the passenger's weight sensors. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact an Acura dealer. For U.S. vehicles you can also contact Acura Client Service at 800-382-2238. For Canadian vehicles you can also contact Canadian Acura Client Service at 888-9-ACURA-9.

#### ✕ Airbag Care

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.**

**Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.**

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

#### Protecting Child Passengers

### **WARNING**

**Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.**

**Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.**

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

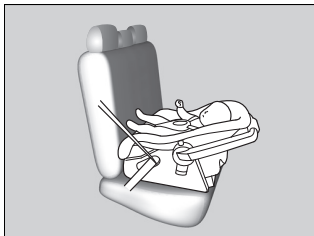
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

 **Safety Labels** P. 65

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



#### Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

▶ **Airbags** P. 35

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

### Protecting Infants

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

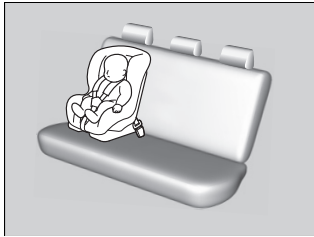
Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

## Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child seat manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat.



### ■ Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat up to age two, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

## ■ Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren). Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

## ☒ Selecting a Child Seat

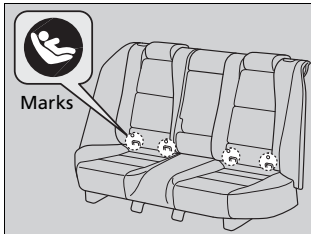
Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

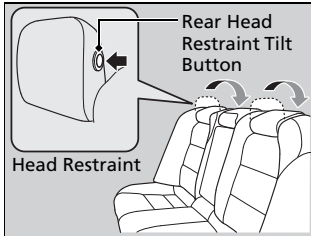


## Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

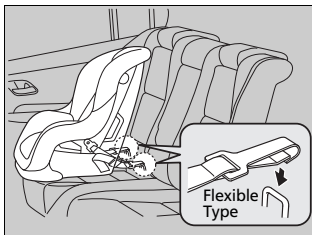
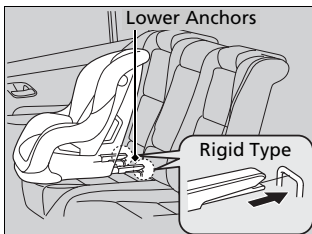
A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.



2. Push the rear head restraint tilt buttons to pivot the head restraints down.

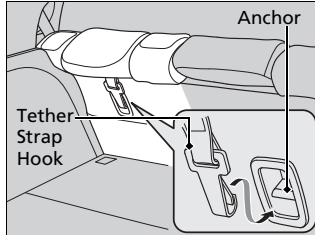


3. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

- ▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

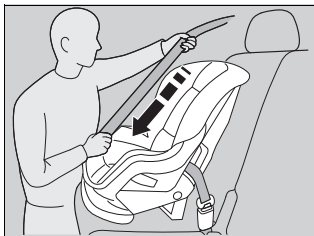
#### ✕ Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



- 4.** Raise the head restraint, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
- 5.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat maker.
- 6.** Lower the head restraint until it locks in place.
- 7.** Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 8.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

### Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
  - ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 4.
5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

### Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

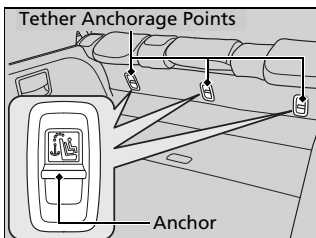


6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

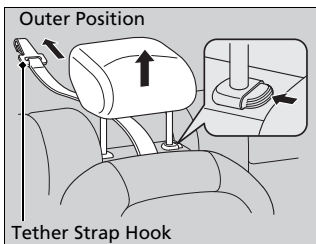
✘ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

## Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position. A child seat that is installed with a seat belt and comes with a tether can use the tether for additional security.

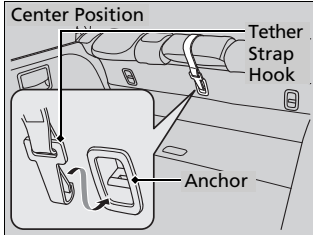


### Using an outer anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
3. Lower the head restraint until it locks in place.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

### Adding Security with a Tether

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.



### ■ Using the center anchor

1. Lower the head restraint.
2. Route the tether strap over the head restraint and seat-back.  
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

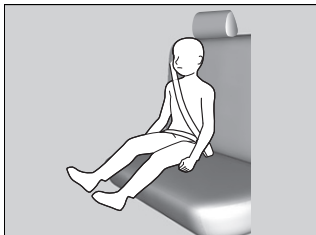
## Safety of Larger Children

### Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### Safety of Larger Children

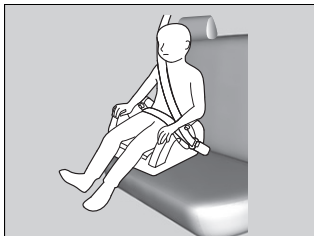
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.



## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in a rear seating position. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

## Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

### ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

### ☒ Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.


## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### Carbon Monoxide Gas

## WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

**Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.**

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.

**Sun Visor**  
U.S. models

**AIR BAG WARNING**  
FLIP VISOR OVER

**WARNING**  
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS

**WARNING: HIGHER ROLL-OVER RISK**  
Avoid Abrupt Maneuvers and Excessive Speeds  
Always Buckle Up  
See Owner's Manual For Further Information.

**Canadian models**

**CAUTION**  
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:  
FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT

**PRECAUTIONS:**  
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES: POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.

**Doorjamb**

U.S. models

**SIDE AIRBAG**

Canadian models

**SIDE AIRBAG**

**Dashboard**  
U.S. models only

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags

Even with Advanced Air Bags

**Radiator Cap**

**DANGER**  
**WARNING**

NEVER OPEN WHEN HOT












# Instrument Panel





This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



<b>Indicators</b> .....	68
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages.....	80
<b>Gauges and Multi-Information Display</b>	
Gauges.....	87
Multi-Information Display .....	88







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 336</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On</b> P. 336</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	  
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 334</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>[II]</b>*1, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine is not started. If “readiness codes” have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system.</li> <li>• Blinks when a misfire in the engine’s cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>Testing of Readiness Codes</b> P. 354</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 335</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>[II]</b>*1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>• Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on while driving</b> - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 334</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	








Instrument Panel

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Shift Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates in which position your shift lever is.</li> </ul>	 <b>Shifting</b> P. 228	—
	Transmission Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	
	<b>M</b> (sequential shift mode) Indicator/Gear Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the manual sequential shift mode is applied.</li> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	 <b>Sequential Shift Mode</b> P. 230	—







\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.











Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*1. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on about a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 28</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 2.9 U.S. gal./10.8 Liter left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*1, then goes off.</li> <li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)</b> P. 255</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Instrument Panel

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.











Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> <li>- Seat belt e-pretensioner*</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>• Blinks when VSA® is active.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist), aka ESC (Electronic Stability Control), System</b> P. 243</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 
	VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when you deactivate VSA®.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>VSA® On and Off</b> P. 244</li> </ul>	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds if you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.</li> </ul>	
	Active Damper System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the Active Damper System.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle has normal damping ability without the active damper feature.   <b>IDS (Integrated Dynamics System)*</b> P. 252</li> </ul>	
	ECPS (Electronically Controlled Power Steering) System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you change the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the ECPS system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Stop in a safe place, stop the engine and wait for a while. Turn on the engine again and see if the indicator goes off.</li> <li><b>Comes back on</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

Instrument Panel

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1.</li> <li>Comes on if the tire pressure of any of the tires becomes significantly low.</li> <li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary.</li> <li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>	 
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the / (information) button to see the message again.</li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take the appropriate action for the message.</li> <li>The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the / button is pressed.</li> </ul>	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.













Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The turn signal indicators blink when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>If you press the hazard warning button, both indicators and all turn signals blink at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☑ <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. , 291</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	—
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in AUTO when the exterior lights are on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you remove the key from the ignition switch*1 while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>	—
	Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
 	Side Airbag Off Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the passenger side airbag system is automatically shut off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It does not mean there is a problem with your side airbags.</li> <li><b>Comes on when nobody is sitting in the passenger seat</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li><b>Comes on when someone is sitting in the seat</b> - Have the passenger sit properly.</li> </ul>	

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Instrument Panel




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>*1</sup>, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON <sup>*1</sup> again.</li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	—
	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	 <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 120	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Cruise Control</b>* P. 232</li> </ul>	—
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Cruise Control</b>* P. 232</li> </ul>	—
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON.</li> <li>Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
	SH-AWD® (Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the SH-AWD® system.</li> <li>Blinks when the differential temperature is too high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> –the engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> – Stop in a safe place, shift to P, and idle the engine until the indicator goes off. If the indicator does not stop blinking, take your vehicle to a dealer.</li> <li> <b>SH-AWD® (Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™)</b> P. 245</li> </ul>	 

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
<b>ACC</b>	ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
<b>ACC</b>	ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you push the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)*</b> P. 235</p>	










Instrument Panel

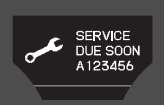




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	BSI (Blind Spot Information) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Stays on while BSI is turned off.</li> <li>• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</li> </ul>	—	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor.</li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Brake System™) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A multi-information display message appears for five seconds.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)*</b> P. 257</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\* Not available on all models

## Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages




The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the / (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Tighten Fuel Cap Message</b> P. 335</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the DRL system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Daytime Running Lights</b> P. 133</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when washer fluid gets low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refill washer fluid.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Refilling Window Washer Fluid</b> P. 290</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

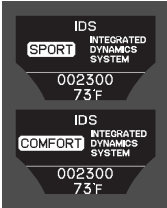
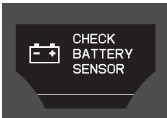
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.</li> <li>• Consequently, <b>SERVICE DUE NOW</b> and <b>SERVICE PAST DUE</b> follow.</li> </ul>	<p>► <b>Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display</b> P. 274</p>
<p>Models without keyless access remote</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK [0].</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remove the key from the ignition switch.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li> </ul>	<p>► <b>Overheating</b> P. 332</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manually open or close the power tailgate.</li> <li>• Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the starting system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As a temporary measure, hold the ignition switch to START [III]*1 for up to 15 seconds and start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Models with adaptive cruise control

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>ACC OFF 002300 73°F</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears for about three seconds when ACC has been automatically canceled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the <b>RES/ACCEL</b> button.</li> <li>➤ <b>ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)*</b> P. 235</li> </ul>
 <p>CMBS CHECK CMBS RADAR SENSOR</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.</li> </ul>
 <p>BRAKE</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)</li> </ul>






Instrument Panel

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears for five seconds when you change the IDS (Integrated Dynamics System) mode.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>IDS (Integrated Dynamics System)*</b> P. 252</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 309</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Instrument Panel




\* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system





Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Starting the Engine P. 223</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears three seconds after the <b>TO START ENGINE</b> message appears.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Starting the Engine P. 223</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button at the same time.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>[P]</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to <b>[P]</b>.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	—

Instrument Panel

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you take the keyless access remote out of the vehicle and close the door while the power mode is ON. The beeper sounds inside and outside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the keyless access remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door.</li> <li>The engine continues to run if you take the keyless access remote out of the vehicle while the engine is running. Once you change the power mode to OFF, the engine does not start again unless you bring back the remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless access remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.                      ► <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 310</li> </ul>


Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you shift into <b>P</b> after having turned off the keyless access system main switch.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove the keyless access remote with the power mode OFF. You cannot remove the remote from the slot while the power mode is other than OFF.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Keyless Access Remote Slot</b> P. 130</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without inserting the keyless access remote under any of the following conditions:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The keyless access remote main switch is off.</li> <li>- The keyless access remote's battery is weak.</li> <li>- The remote is not inside the vehicle.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button after you insert the keyless access remote into the slot.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Keyless Access Remote Slot</b> P. 130</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the power mode is OFF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove the keyless access remote from the slot.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Keyless Access Remote Slot</b> P. 130</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Instrument Panel



## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada).

### Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

### Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.


### Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

#### ⌘ Fuel Gauge

##### NOTICE

You should refuel when the needle approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

#### ⌘ Temperature Gauge

##### NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

➤ **Overheating** P. 332

## Multi-Information Display

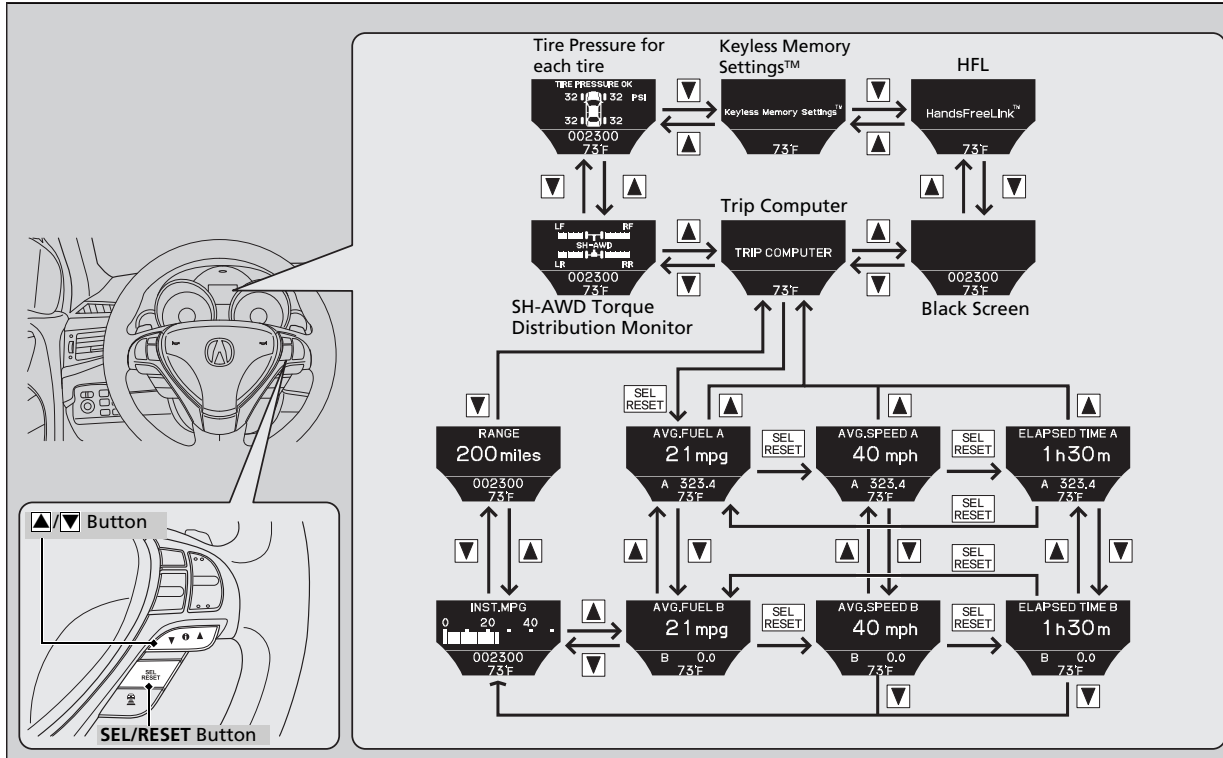
---

The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

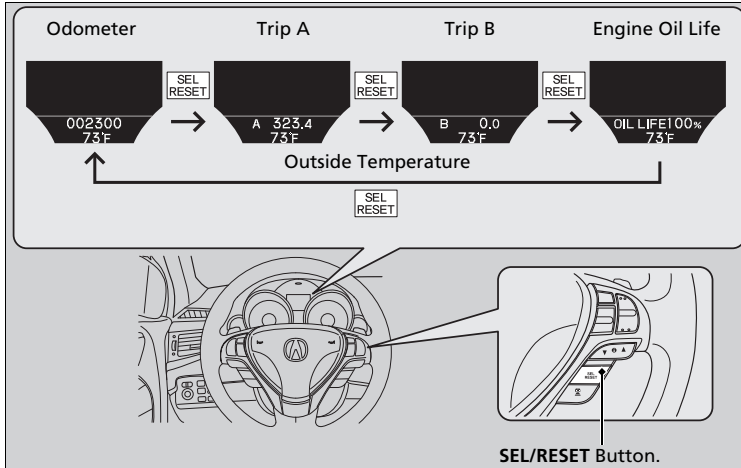
It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### ■ Switching the Display

Press the (▲/▼ information) button or the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



Instrument Panel



### ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

## Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

## Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

### Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

▶ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 273

## Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### ▶ Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

### ▶ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

### ▶ Average Fuel Economy

You can choose to reset Trip A information when you refuel.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

### ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph or km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

### ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your trips in the past.

### ☒ Average Speed

You can choose to reset Trip A information when you refuel.

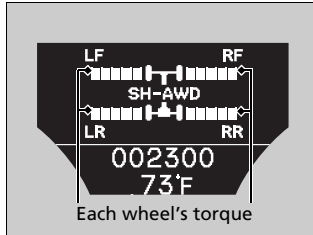
☒ **Customized Features** P. 94

### ☒ Elapsed Time

You can choose to reset Trip A information when you refuel.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 94

### SH-AWD® Torque Distribution Monitor



The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

▶ **SH-AWD® (Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™)** P. 245

### Tire Pressure Monitor

Shows each tire's pressure.

▶ **TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System)** P. 248

### Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®


Shows your paired cell phone's information.

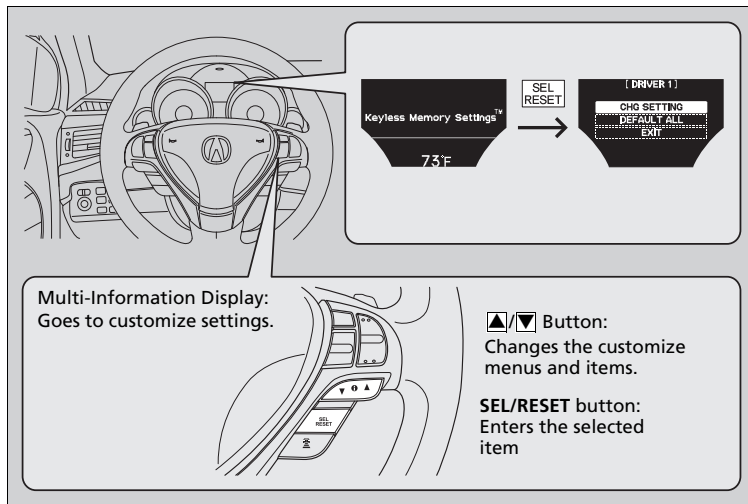
▶ **Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®** P. 197

## Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

### How to customize

Press the ▲/▼ button to select **Keyless Memory Settings™** while the ignition switch is in ON \*1.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Customized Features


To customize other features, press the ▲/▼ button.

▶ **List of customizable options** P. 96

▶ **Example of customization settings** P. 99

Customization is possible when you see the driver's ID (**DRIVER 1** or **DRIVER 2**) on the CHG setting screen.

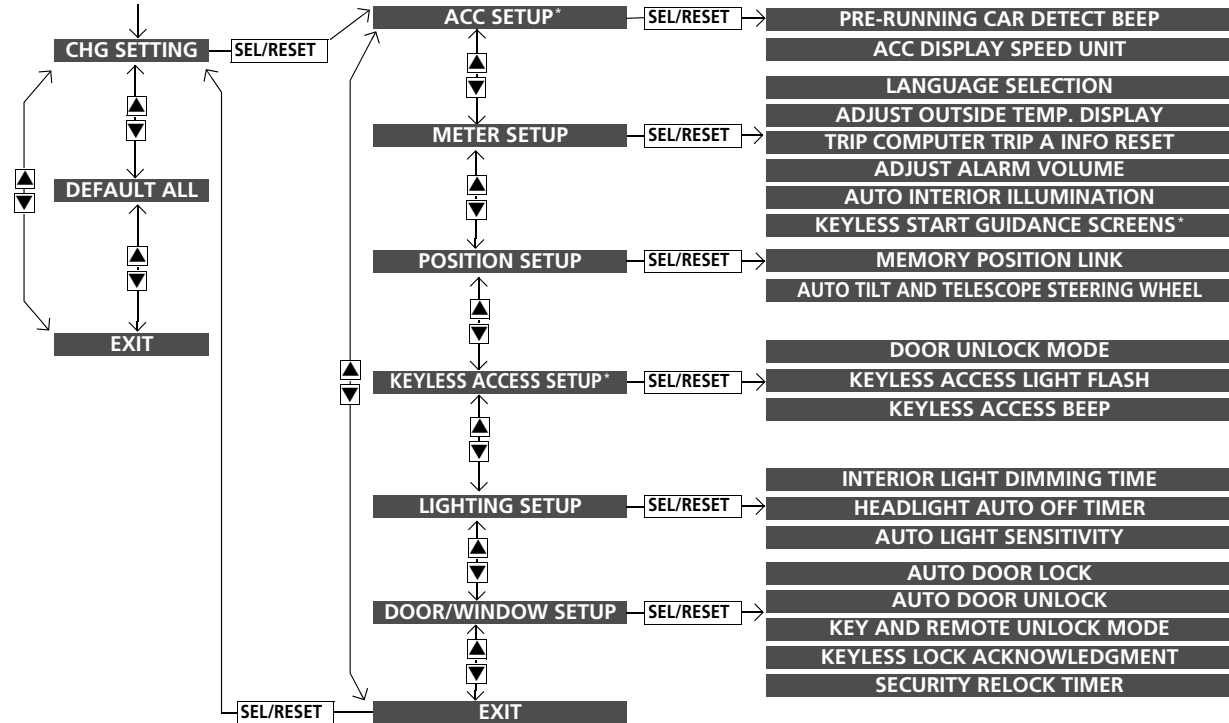
The driver's ID indicates which remote transmitter you have used to unlock the driver's door. The customized settings are recalled every time you unlock the driver's door with that remote.

When you customize settings: Shift to 



■ **Customization flow**

Press the ▲/▼ button to select **Keyless Memory Settings™** and press the **SEL/RESET** button.



Instrument Panel

\* Not available on all models

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
ACC Setup* <sup>1</sup>	<b>Pre-running Car Detect Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle ahead of you gets too close.	<b>ON<sup>*2</sup>, OFF</b>
	<b>ACC Display Speed Unit</b>	Changes the ACC display speed unit.	<b>km/h<sup>*2</sup> (Canada), mph<sup>*2</sup> (U.S.)</b>
Meter Setup	<b>Language Selection</b>	Changes the displayed language.	<b>English<sup>*2</sup>, French, Spanish</b>
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-5°F ~ ±0°F<sup>*2</sup> ~ +5°F (U.S.)</b>
			<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*2</sup> ~ +3°C (Canada)</b>
	<b>Trip Computer Trip A Info Reset</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>WITH REFUEL<sup>*2</sup>, MANUAL ONLY, IGN OFF</b>
	<b>Adjust Alarm Volume</b>	Changes the indicator alarm volume into three levels.	<b>HIGH, MID<sup>*2</sup>, LOW</b>
	<b>Auto Interior Illumination</b>	Changes the interior light sensitivity to your liking.	<b>MAX, HIGH, MID<sup>*2</sup>, LOW, MIN, OFF</b>
<b>Keyless Start Guidance Screens<sup>*1</sup></b>	Changes the display of the keyless start guidance screens.	<b>ON<sup>*2</sup>, OFF</b>	

\*1: Not available on all models

\*2: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
<b>Position Setup</b>	<b>Memory Position Link</b>	Changes the driver's seat, the steering wheel, and the outside mirror positions to a stored setting.	<b>ON<sup>*2</sup>, OFF</b>
	<b>Auto Tilt and Telescope Steering Wheel</b>	Moves the steering wheel fully up when you get in/get out of the vehicle.	<b>ON<sup>*2</sup>, OFF</b>
<b>Keyless Access Setup<sup>*1</sup></b>	<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>Driver Door<sup>*2</sup>, All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON<sup>*2</sup>, OFF</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Beep</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON<sup>*2</sup>, OFF</b>
<b>Lighting Setup</b>	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60 sec, 30 sec<sup>*2</sup>, 15 sec</b>
	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60 sec, 30 sec, 15 sec<sup>*2</sup>, 0 sec</b>
	<b>Auto Light Sensitivity</b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	<b>Max, High, Mid<sup>*2</sup>, Low, Min</b>

\*1: Not available on all models

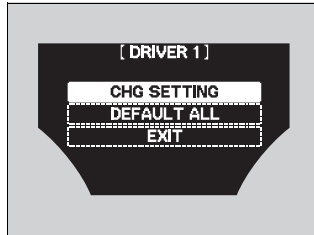
\*2: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
Door/ Window Setup	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	<b>Shift from [P], With VEH SPD*<sup>1</sup>, OFF</b>
	<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate unlock automatically.	<b>Shift to [P]*<sup>1</sup>, IGN Off, OFF Driver Door*<sup>1</sup>, All Doors</b>
	<b>Key and Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock with the remote transmitter on the first push.	<b>Driver Door*<sup>1</sup>, All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Acknowledgment</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>, OFF</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors and the tailgate to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door and the tailgate.	<b>90 sec, 60 sec, 30 sec*<sup>1</sup></b>
<b>Default All</b>		Sets/Cancel all the customized settings as default.	<b>Set, Cancel</b>

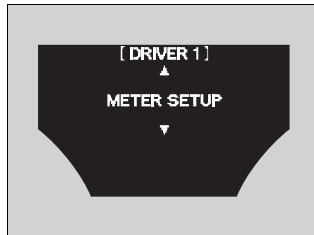
\*1: Default Setting

### ■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **TRIP COMPUTER TRIP A INFO RESET** setting to **MANUAL ONLY** are shown below. The default setting for Trip Computer Trip A Info Reset is **WITH REFUEL**.



1. Press / button to select **CHG SETTING**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

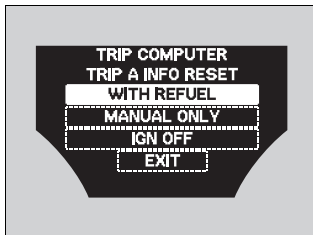


2. Press the / button until **METER SETUP** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - ▶ **LANGUAGE SELECTION** appears first in the display.

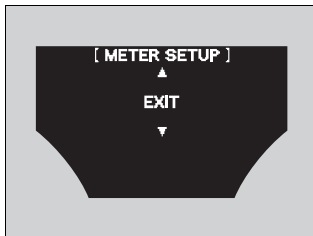
Instrument Panel



4. Press the button until **TRIP COMPUTER TRIP A INFO RESET** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



5. Press the button and select **MANUAL ONLY**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



6. Press the button until **EXIT** appears in the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Setting the Clock</b> .....	102
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>	
Key Types and Functions .....	103
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	106
Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength* .....	110
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	111
Childproof Door Locks .....	112
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	113
<b>Opening and Closing the Tailgate</b> ..	114
<b>Security System</b> .....	120
<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> .....	123

<b>Opening and Closing the Panoramic Glass Roof</b> .....	126
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b> .....	127
Ignition Switch .....	127
ENGINE START/STOP Button* .....	128
Turn Signals .....	131
Light Switches .....	131
Fog Lights .....	133
Daytime Running Lights .....	133
Wipers and Washers .....	134
Brightness Control .....	136
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button .....	137

Driving Position Memory System .....	138
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	140
<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b> .....	141
<b>Adjusting the Seats</b> .....	143
<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	151
Interior Lights .....	151
Interior Convenience Items .....	153
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	163
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	163
Synchronized Mode .....	165
Automatic Climate Control Sensors .....	166

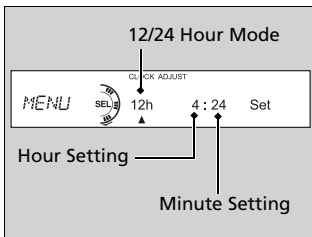
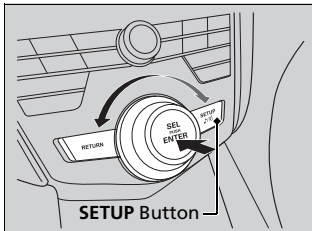
\* Not available on all models









## Clock

### Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

### Adjusting the Time



1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate  to select **CLOCK ADJUST** in the display.
3. Press . **CLOCK ADJUST** appears.
4. Rotate  to select the item you want to adjust (12/24 hour mode, hour, minute). Then press .
5. Rotate  to make the adjustment.
6. Press  to enter your selection. The display returns to **CLOCK ADJUST**. Repeat steps 4 to 6 to adjust other items.
7. To enter the selection, Rotate  and select Set, then press .
8. Press the **SETUP** button to go back to the normal display.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Clock


You can switch the clock display between 24 hours and 12 hours when in the menu mode.

Selector Knob Icon details

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

To set the time to the nearest hour:

Press and hold the **CLOCK** button until the clock display begins to blink, then press the  (Reset) button.

Depending on the displayed time, the clock sets forward or backward.

Example:

1:06 will reset to 1:00

1:53 will reset to 2:00

### Models with navigation system

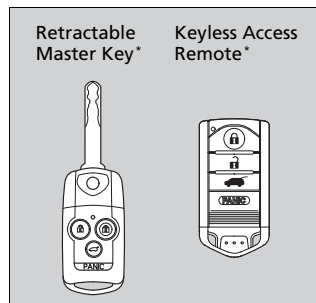
The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.



## Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

### Master Keys



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door. You can also use the remote transmitter or keyless access system\* to lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door.

The seat automatically moves to the preset position when you unlock the door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

➤ **Driving Position Memory System** P. 138

### Key Types and Functions

All of the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 120

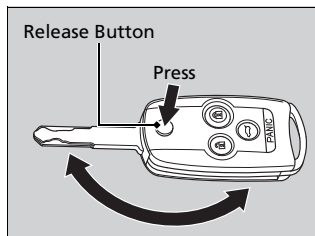
The keys contain precision electronics. Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter or keyless access system may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

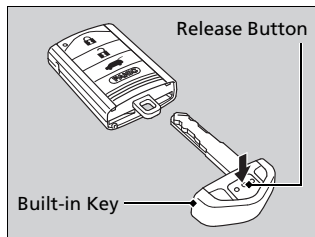
### ■ Retractable master keys\*



The master key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
  - ▶ Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

### ■ Keyless access remote\*



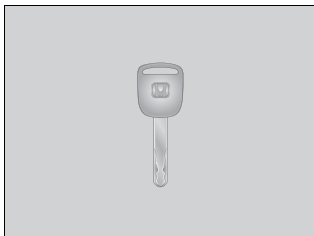
The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate when the keyless access remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while pressing the release button. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless access remote until it clicks.

### ☒ Retractable master keys\*

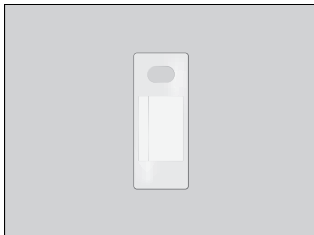
If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

### ■ Valet Key\*



Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

### ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

### ☒ Valet Key\*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

### ☒ Key Number Tag

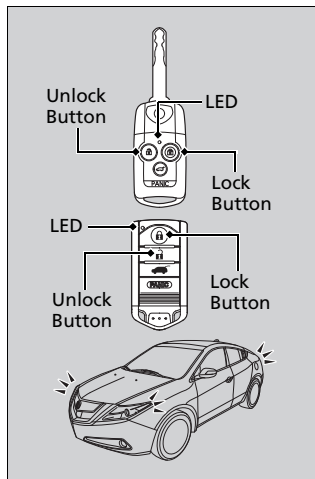
Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Controls

#### ■ Locking the doors

Press the LOCK button.

##### Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door will lock, and the security system sets.

##### Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- ▶ A beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

#### ■ Unlocking the doors

Press the UNLOCK button.

##### Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door and fuel fill door unlocks.

##### Twice:

- ▶ The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock.

### ▣ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking vehicle with the remote transmitter, they will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

▣ **Customized Features** P. 94

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the UNLOCK button.

No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.

▣ **Interior Lights** P. 151

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or tailgate is open.

If the distance at which it works varies, the battery is probably low.

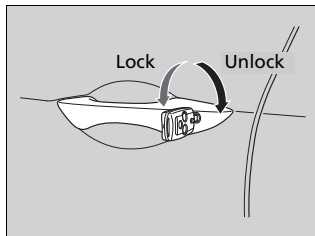
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

▣ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 310

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

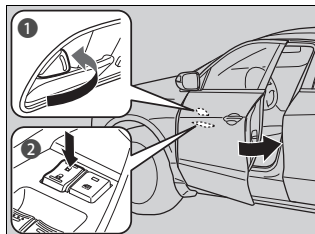
▣ **Customized Features** P. 94

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key



Fully insert the key and turn it.

## Locking a Door Without Using a Key



### Locking the driver's door

Pull the lock tab rearward **1** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **2**, and close the door.

### Locking the passenger's doors

Pull the lock tab rearward and close the door.

### Lockout prevention system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch<sup>\*1</sup>, or the keyless access remote is inside the vehicle, and any door or the tailgate is open.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all of the other doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door and fuel fill door unlock first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

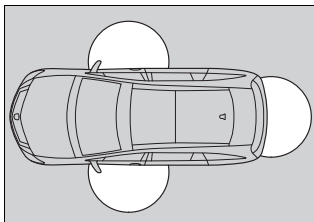
▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

If you are using the retractable key, make sure it is fully extended.

## Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors, the tailgate, and fuel fill door lock at the same time. Make sure you have the key in your hand before locking the door to prevent it from being locked in the vehicle.

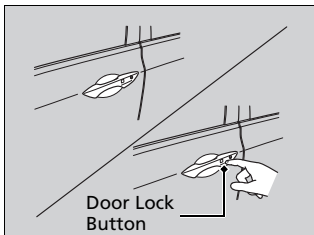
## ■ Using the Keyless Access System\*



When you carry the keyless access remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate.

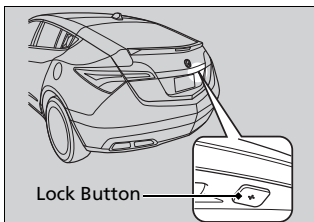
You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the tailgate within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the tailgate release switch.

### ■ Locking the vehicle



Press the door lock button on the front door or lock button on the tailgate.

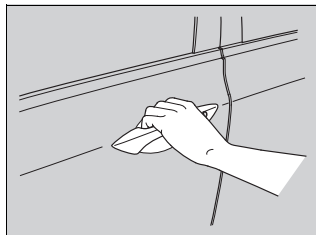
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash; a beeper sounds; all the doors and the tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



### ⊗ Using the Keyless Access System\*

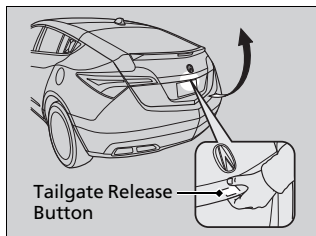
- The driver must carry the keyless access remote and not leave it in the vehicle when you get out.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless access remote can lock/unlock the doors if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a carwash if the keyless access remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.

## ■ Unlocking the vehicle



Grab the front passenger's door handle or press the tailgate release button.

- ▶ All doors and the tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



### ⊗ Using the Keyless Access System\*

- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless access remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless access remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep and unlock settings can be customized using the multi-information display.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 94

\* Not available on all models

## Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength\*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless access remote when locking/unlocking the doors, unlocking the tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors or unlocking the tailgate or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless access remote together with telecommunications equipment, notebook computers, mobile phones, or wireless machines.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless access remote.

### Low Keyless Access Remote Signal Strength\*

Communication between the keyless access remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless access remote's battery.

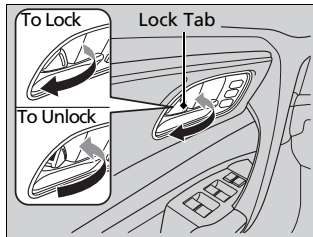
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless access remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.



## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### Using the Lock Tab



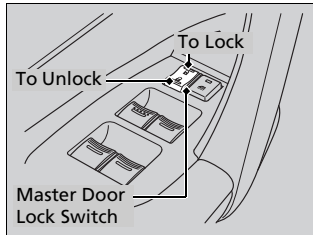
#### ■ Locking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

#### ■ Unlocking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

### Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

### Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

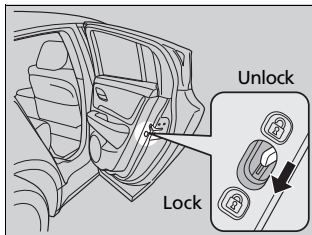
### Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ☒ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors and unlocks the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

### Auto Door Locking

#### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel fill door lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

### Auto Door Unlocking

#### ■ Park unlock mode

The driver's door unlocks when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

### Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the multi-information display.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

### ■ Opening the tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

### ■ Closing the tailgate

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
  - ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
- **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 64

### ⓘ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

#### **WARNING**

Closing a power tailgate while anyone is in the path of the tailgate can cause serious injury.

**Make sure everyone is clear before closing the tailgate.**

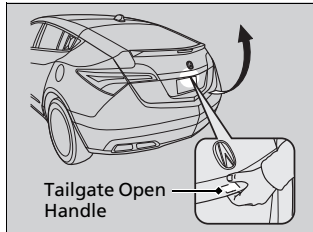
Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area when closing the gate.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits their head or closes on their hands. Be especially cautious if children are around.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the cargo area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

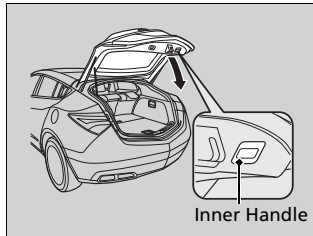
## Opening/Closing the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Push up inside the tailgate handle and lift open the tailgate.

### Models with keyless access system

If you are carrying the keyless access remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To manually close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

### Opening/Closing the Tailgate

#### Models with keyless access system

Even if the tailgate is locked, you can open the tailgate when carrying the keyless access remote. A person who is not carrying the keyless access remote can also unlock the tailgate if a person who is carrying it is within range.

#### Models with keyless access system

If you leave the keyless access remote inside the vehicle and close the tailgate when all the doors are locked, the beeper sounds and the driver's or all the doors unlock, depending on the setting.

## Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the instrument panel, or pressing the button on the tailgate.

### ■ The power tailgate can be opened when:

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- Press and hold the tailgate button on the remote transmitter for about one second.

### ■ The power tailgate can be closed when:

- The tailgate is fully open.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- Press and hold the tailgate button on the remote transmitter for about one second.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ⊗ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

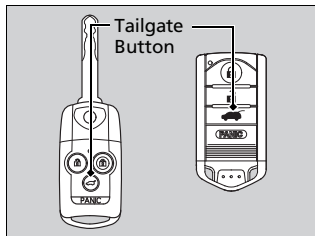
Installing aftermarket components other than genuine Acura accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.

The beeper sounds when you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1, and move the shift lever out of the **P** position while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

## Remote Transmitter



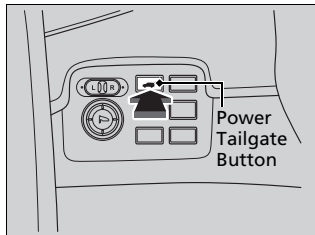
To open or close the power tailgate, do the following:

Press the unlock button twice and unlock all doors and the tailgate first. Then, press and hold the tailgate button for about one second.

The beeper sounds and some exterior light flash.

To reverse direction while the power tailgate is in operation, press the button again. The beeper sounds three times and the tailgate reverses direction.

## Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the tailgate button in the instrument panel for about one second. The beeper sounds and some exterior lights flash.

To reverse direction while the power tailgate is in operation, press the button again. The beeper sounds three times and the tailgate reverses direction.

## Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

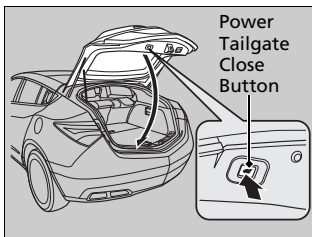
If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. Three beeps sound.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

### ■ Power Tailgate Close Button



Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is closing, it stops and reverses direction.

### ■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

### ☒ Power Tailgate Close Button

If you push the tailgate release button inside the handle while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing, the power tailgate operation stops. Use caution if the tailgate stops in the middle of either operation. It may suddenly swing up or down.

### ☒ Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate open handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.



## Power Tailgate Fail-Safe Mode

The power tailgate fail-safe mode detects if there is an extra load on the tailgate (for example, it is covered with snow). If an extra load is detected, the tailgate opens completely then lowers to the closed position.

### ⊗ Power Tailgate Fail-Safe Mode

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fail-safe mode may activate.

Once the power tailgate fail-safe mode activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fail-safe mode constantly activates, consult a dealer.

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or selecting the ACCESSORY mode with an **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the doors, tailgate, or hood are opened without the key, remote transmitter or keyless access remote\*.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all of the exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ☒ Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the ignition key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

### ☒ Security System Alarm

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK **[0]**, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.\*<sup>1</sup>
- All doors and the tailgate are locked with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system is set.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key, remote transmitter, keyless access system\*, or the ignition switch is turned to ON **[II]**\*<sup>1</sup>. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

#### ☒ Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

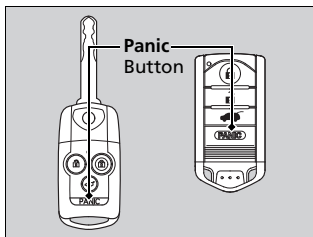
- Unlocking the door with the lock tab or the master door lock switch.
- Opening the tailgate with the power tailgate button in the instrument panel.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

## ■ Panic Mode



### ■ The PANIC button on the remote transmitter

If you press the **PANIC** button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

### ■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

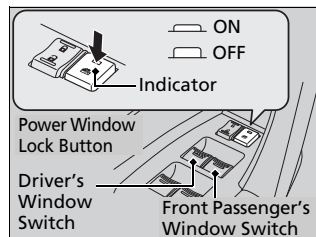
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1, using the switches on the doors. The driver side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on when children are in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



#### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

#### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

**Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.**

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off\*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

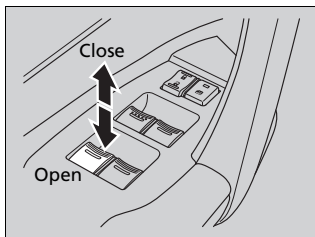
#### **Auto Reverse**

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

### ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function

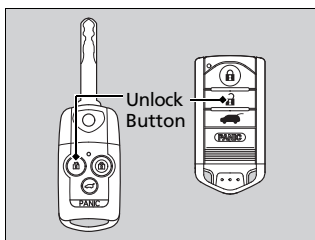


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

### ■ Opening Windows, Panoramic Glass Roof, and Sunshades with the Remote Transmitter

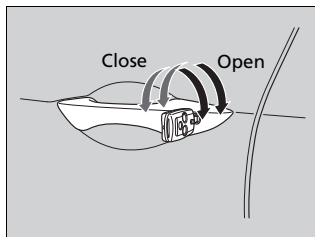


**To open:** Press the UNLOCK button twice within 20 seconds and hold it down for the second time. If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

☒ Opening Windows, Panoramic Glass Roof, and Sunshades with the Remote Transmitter

The sunshades will not stop opening and will continue moving to the full open position. You cannot operate the power windows with the remote transmitter when the key is in the ignition switch.

## Opening/Closing the Windows, Panoramic Glass Roof, and Sunshades with the Key or the Built-in Key



**To open:** Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 20 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

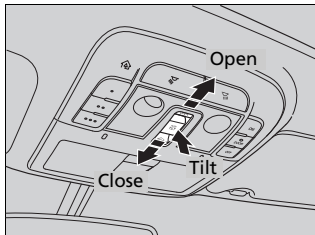
**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 20 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows, panoramic glass roof, and sunshades at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

The sunshades will not stop opening and will continue moving to the full open position.

## Opening/Closing the Panoramic Glass Roof

You can only operate the panoramic glass roof and the sunshades switches when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic glass roof and the sunshades.



Controls

### Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly, then release.

The panoramic glass roof or sunshades will automatically open all the way. To stop the panoramic glass roof or sunshades midway, push the switch briefly.

### Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### Tilting the panoramic glass roof up

**To tilt:** Push on the center of the panoramic glass roof switch.

► The sunshades will open automatically and the panoramic glass roof will start to tilt up.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Opening/Closing the Panoramic Glass Roof

### ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic glass roof or sunshades on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic glass roof and sunshades before opening or closing it.

### NOTICE

Opening the panoramic glass roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic glass roof panel or motor.

The power panoramic glass roof and sunshades can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off\*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

The panoramic glass roof can operate only when the sunshades are fully open.

The sunshades can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

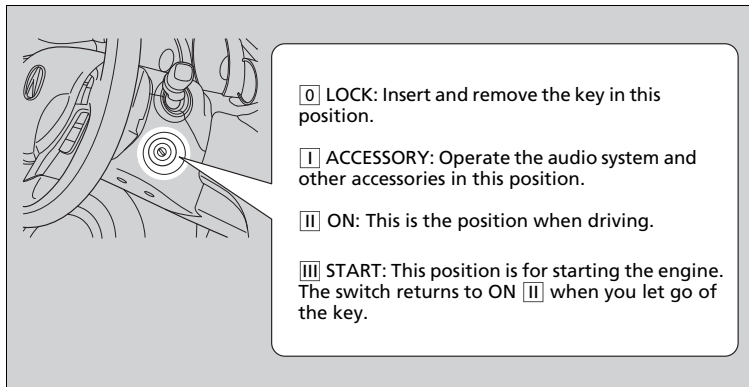
The sunshades can operate only when the panoramic glass roof is fully closed.

The front and rear sunshades cannot be operated individually.



## Ignition Switch

Models without keyless access remote



### Ignition Switch

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

When this happens, the following messages appear on the multi-information display:

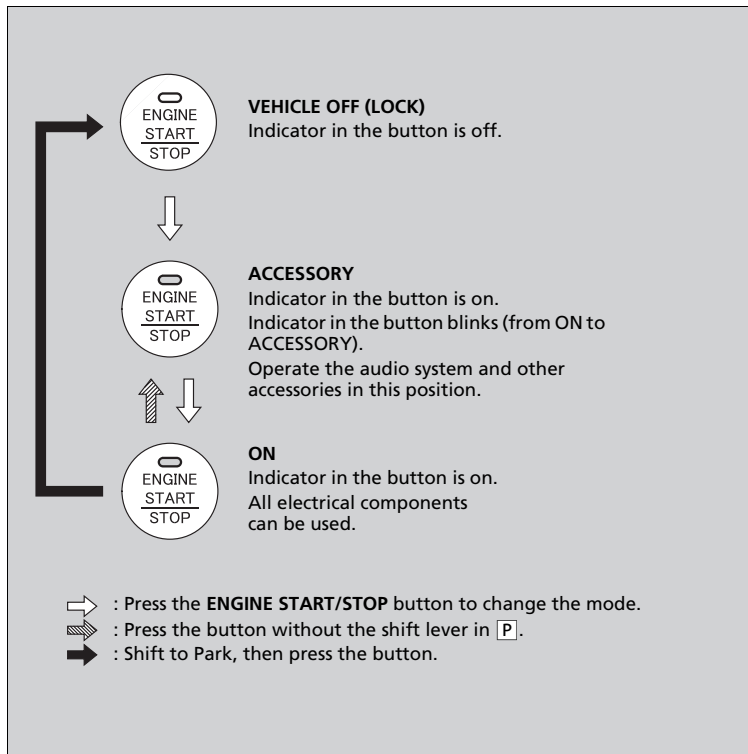
- In LOCK **0**: **REMOVE KEY.**
- In ACCESSORY **I**: **REMOVE KEY**

The buzzer will stop when you take the key out.

If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

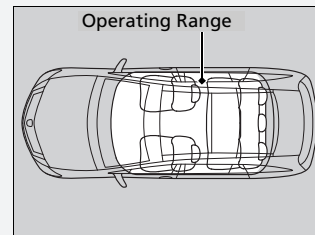
## ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

Controls



### ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range












You can start the engine when the keyless access remote is inside the vehicle.  
The engine may also run if the keyless access remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

If you open the driver's door in the ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

If you cannot start the engine with the keyless access remote inside the vehicle, insert the remote into the slot.

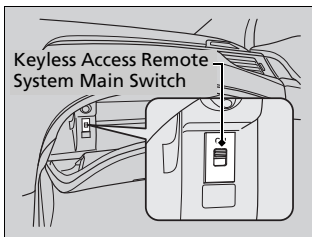
**Keyless Access Remote Slot** P. 130

### Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY (I) 	ON (II) 	START (III) 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li> <li>The steering wheel is locked.</li> <li>No electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine is turned off.</li> <li>Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power sockets can be operated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Normal key position while driving.</li> <li>All electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this position to start the engine.</li> <li>The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.</li> </ul>
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON   Indicator is: On Off	START 
With Keyless Access System and ENGINE START/STOP Button	Indicator-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine is turned off and POWER is shut down.</li> <li>The steering wheel is locked.</li> <li>No electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	Indicator-On or blinking Off (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engine is turned off.</li> <li>Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power sockets can be operated.</li> </ul>	Indicator-On (engine is turned off) Off (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	Indicator-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.</li> </ul>

Controls

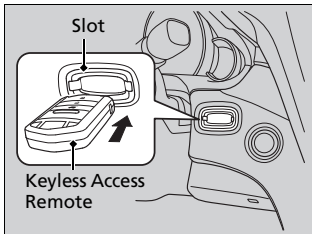
## ■ Keyless Access System On and Off



The keyless access system main switch is in the glove box. Switch the keyless access system on or off.

Turning off the keyless access system cancels all the system features.

## ■ Keyless Access Remote Slot



To change the power mode, insert the keyless access remote into the slot while the keyless access system main switch is off.

### ■ When inserting the remote into the slot

Push the keyless access remote with the built-in key side towards you into the slot until you hear a click.

### ■ When removing the remote from the slot

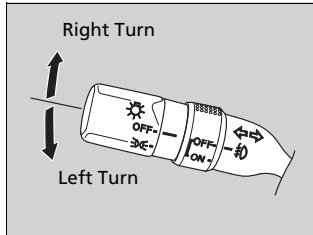
Turn off the power mode before removing the keyless access remote from the slot.

## ☒ Keyless Access Remote Slot

Use the slot if you cannot operate the keyless access system, or the remote's battery is weak. Inserting the keyless access remote into the slot allows for the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to operate.

To avoid damaging the slot, do not insert any other objects into the slot or put a sticker on the keyless access remote.

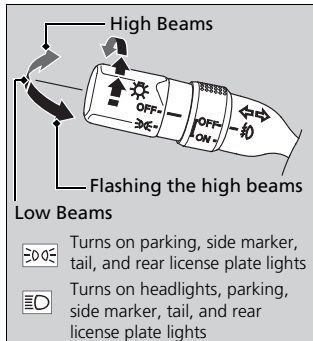
## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

## Light Switches

### Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch.

#### ■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

#### ■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

#### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### ☒ Light Switches

If you remove the key\*1 from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

#### ☒ Lights On Indicator P. 75

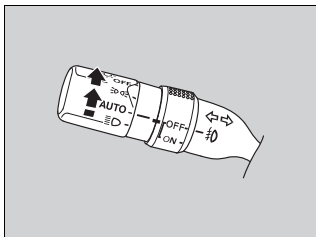
Repeatedly turning the headlights on and off reduces the life of the HID headlight bulbs.

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Automatic Lighting Control



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

▶ You can change the AUTO light sensitivity setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

## Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off within 15 seconds after you remove the key\*1 and close the driver's door.

▶ You can change the **headlight auto off timer** setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

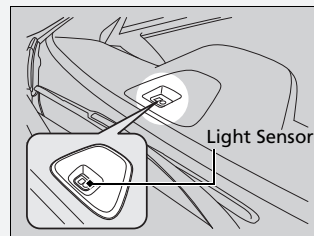
The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Automatic Lighting Control

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

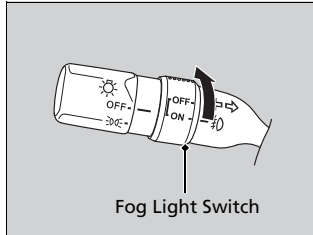
The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



Adjust the AUTO light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
MAX	
HIGH	
MID	
LOW	
MIN	Dark

## Fog Lights



When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

## Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.
- The headlight switch is off.
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch will turn off the daytime running lights.

When the headlights are on, the daytime running lights are off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

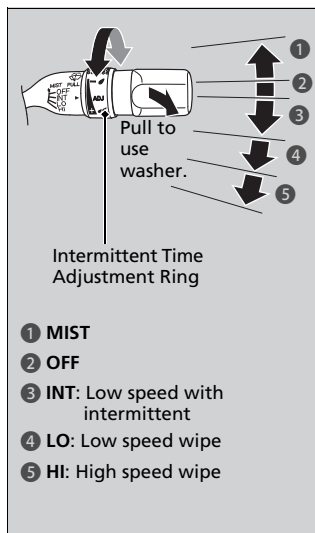
### ☒ Fog Lights

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on. They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

☒ **Fog Light Indicator** P. 75

## Wipers and Washers

Controls



The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Adjusting the delay

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper delay.



### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers make one more sweep before stopping.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Wipers and Washers

### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

### NOTICE

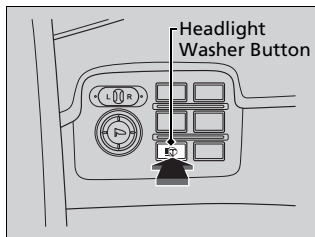
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield, becoming stuck. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defroster to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.


If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting and the LO setting become the same.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.



## Headlight Washers\*



Turn the headlights on and press the headlight washer button to operate. The headlight washers also operate when you turn the windshield washers for the first time after the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1.

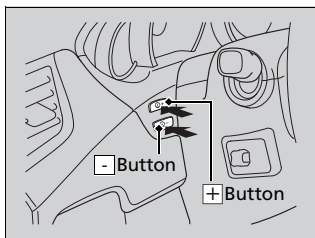
## Headlight Washers\*

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windshield washers.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Brightness Control



When the parking lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON **(II)**\*1, you can use the **+** or **-** button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

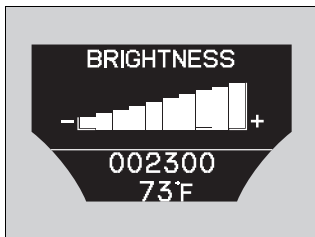
**Brighten:** Press the **+** button.

**Dim:** Press the **-** button.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The multi-information display will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the multi-information display while you are adjusting it.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ☒ Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

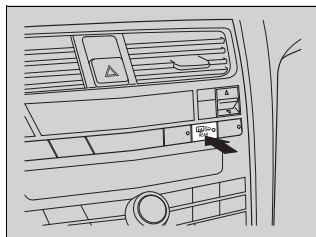
If you press the **+** button until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the parking lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

You can customize when the glare reduction function starts.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 94

## Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button



Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

### ⊗ Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button

#### NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Driving Position Memory System

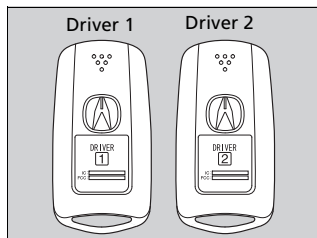
You can store two driver's seat (except for power lumbar), steering wheel and outside mirror positions with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*, the seat and outside mirrors adjust automatically to one of the two preset positions.

The steering wheel will move to the stored position when you insert the key into the ignition switch.

The multi-information display shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle when you enter.

- Driver 1 transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- Driver 2 transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



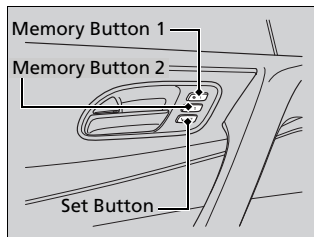
Controls

### Driving Position Memory System

Using the multi-information display, you can disable the automatic seat, steering wheel and outside mirrors adjustment function.

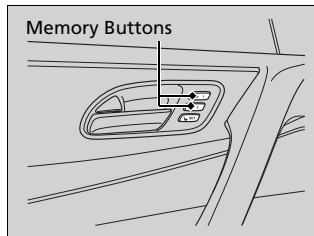
➤ **Customized Features** P. 94

## Storing a Position in Memory



1. Adjust the driver's seat, the steering wheel and the outside mirrors to the desired position, and turn the ignition switch to ON [II]<sup>\*1</sup>.
2. Press the **SET** button.
  - ▶ You will hear the beeper, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press memory button [1] or [2] within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
  - ▶ Once the seat, the steering wheel and the outside mirror positions have been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

## Recalling the Stored Position



1. Move the shift lever to [P].
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button ([1] or [2]).
  - ▶ You will hear the beeper, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat, the steering wheel and the outside mirrors will automatically move to the memorized positions. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

## Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat, the steering wheel or the outside mirror position before the double-beep.
- You turn the ignition switch to any position except ON [II]<sup>\*1</sup>.

## Recalling the Stored Position

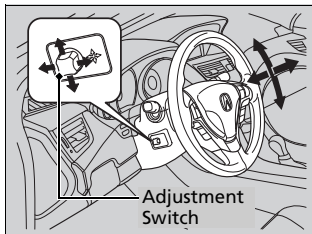
The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button ([1] or [2]).
- Adjust the seat, the steering wheel or the outside mirror position.
- Shift into any position except [P].

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



Push and hold the adjustment switch to move the steering wheel in, out, up or down.

Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

Controls

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

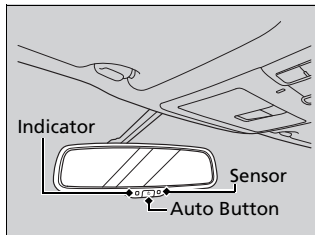
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

### Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

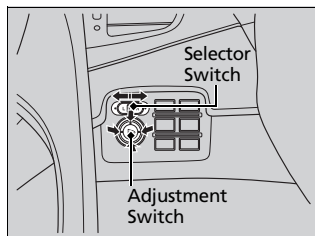
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

**Adjusting the Seat Positions** P. 143

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in **R**.

## Power Door Mirrors



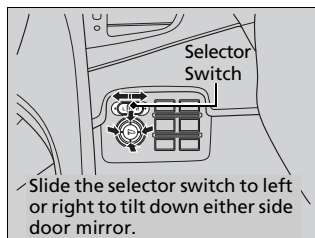
You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror



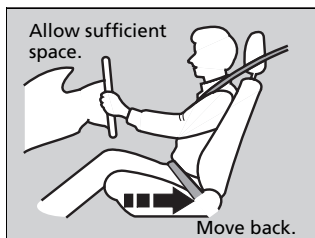
If activated, either side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the shift lever in **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the selected side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you shift out of **R**.

To activate this feature, turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1 and slide the selector switch to the left or right side.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

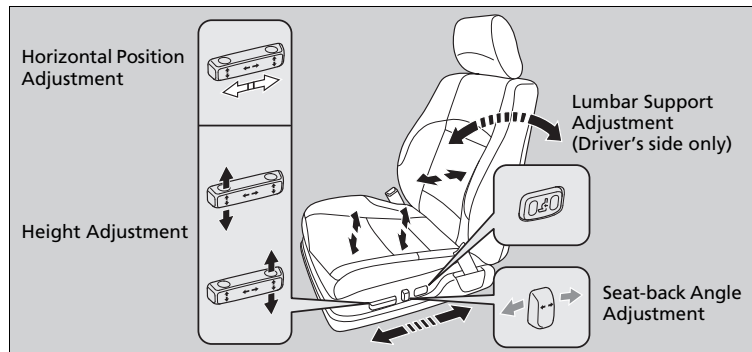


## Adjusting the Seat Positions



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### ■ Adjusting the front power seats



### ⊗ Adjusting the Seats

## ⚠ WARNING

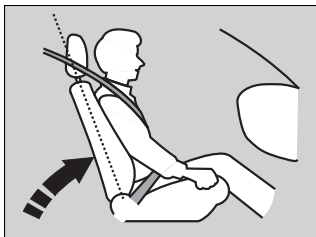
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

## Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

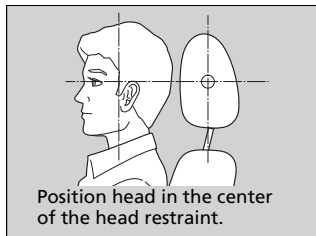
Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

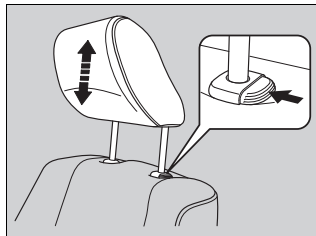
## ■ Adjusting the Head Restraints



Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

## ■ Adjusting the front head restraint positions



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ⊗ Adjusting the Head Restraints

### ⚠ WARNING

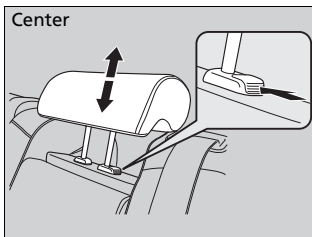
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints.

▶ **Active Head Restraints** P. 148

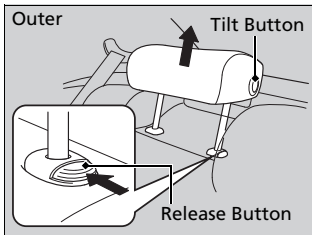
## Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in a back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

**To raise the center head restraint:**

Push up on the bottom.



**To lower the center head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

**To tilt the outer head restraint:**

Press the tilt button, and then fold it down backward.

**To raise the outer head restraint:**

Pull it up by hand.

## Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### To remove a front or rear center head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### To remove a rear outer head restraint:

Push the tilt button, then fold the head restraint backward. Push the release button, then pull the restraint up and out.

### To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

## WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

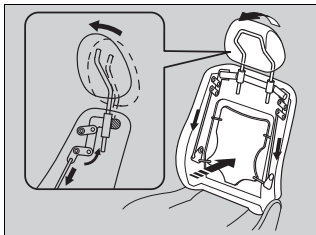
After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

## Active Head Restraints

The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. In a rear impact, an occupant properly secured by a seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will move forward. This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head, which helps reduce the likelihood of whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.



## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

### ⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Active Head Restraints

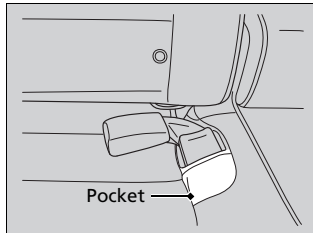
In order for the active head restraints to operate properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

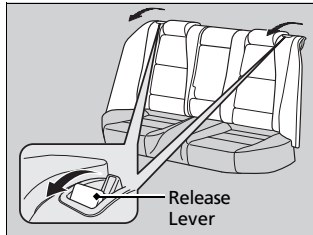
After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position. If the restraint does not return to its normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## Rear Seats

### Folding Down the Rear Seats



1. Store the center seat belt buckle into the pocket in the rear seat-back.



2. Lower the head restraints to their lowest positions.
3. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

### Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the cargo area.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the tailgate open.

⚠ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 64

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

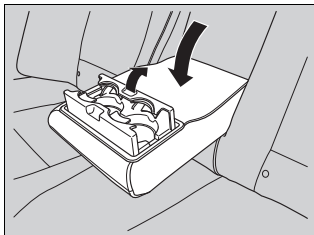
Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

⚠ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 47

**Make sure all items in the cargo area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

## Armrest

### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



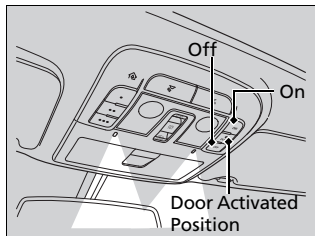
Pull down the armrest in the center seat-back.

Controls



## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches




#### ■ ON


The map lights come on regardless of whether the doors or the tailgate is open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The map lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors or the tailgate is opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- You remove the key from the ignition switch.\*<sup>1</sup>
- When any of the doors and the tailgate are closed, then you press each  (map light) button.

#### ■ OFF

The front map lights can be turned on and off by pressing each  (map light) button.

The rear map lights remain off regardless of whether the doors or the tailgate is open or closed.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models


### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the map lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors and the tailgate are closed.


The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you remove the key\*<sup>1</sup> from the ignition switch\*<sup>1</sup> but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

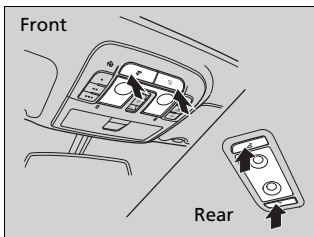
 **Customized Features** P. 94


The map lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch or ACCESSORY mode\*.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON \*<sup>1</sup>.

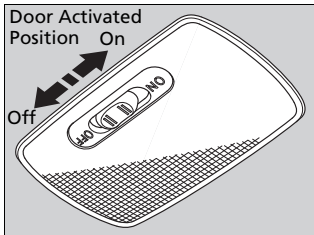
If you leave any of the doors or the tailgate open without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

## Map Lights



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) button.

## Cargo Area Light



### ■ ON

The light comes on regardless of whether the tailgate is open or closed.


### ■ Door activated

The light comes on when you open the tailgate, and goes off when closed.

### ■ OFF

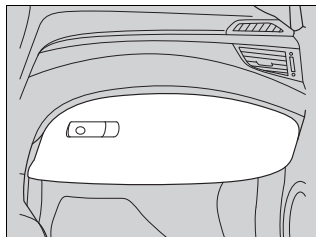
The light stays off with or without opening the tailgate.

## Map Lights

When the ceiling light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the  (map light) button.

## Interior Convenience Items

### Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the master key or the built-in key.

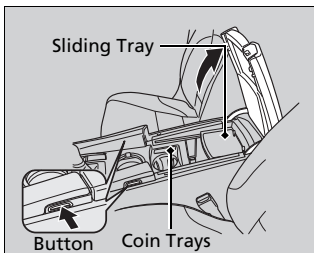
### Glove Box

#### **⚠ WARNING**

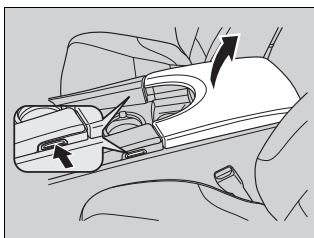
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

## Console Compartment



Your vehicle has a multi-function center console. It includes beverage holders, storage compartments, an armrest, storage trays for coins or small items, and a sliding tray.

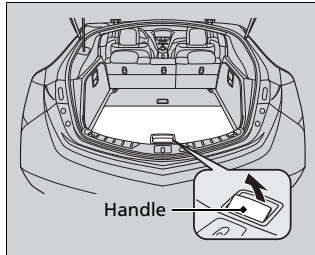


Push the button on either side of the console compartment to open the console compartment.

## ☒ Console Compartment

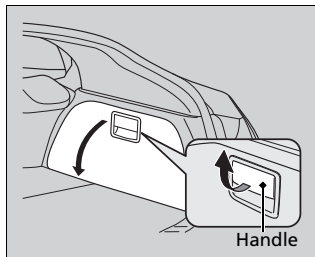
The console compartment light comes on when the parking lights are on.

### ■ Under-floor Storage Area



Pull the handle to open the cargo floor lid.

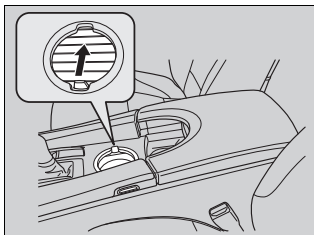
### ■ Side Storage Compartment



Located on the side panel in the cargo area.  
Pull up the handle and remove the lid.

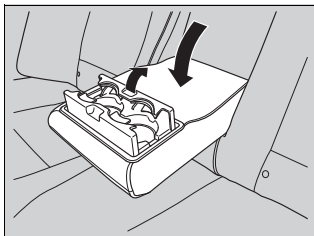
Controls

## Beverage Holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Slide the lid and the tray to use the front seat beverage holders.



### ■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down and pull the lid to use the rear seat beverage holders. To close the lid, push it down until it latches.

## ☒ Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

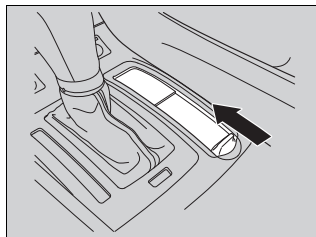
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

When you put back the armrest in the center seat-back, make sure the lid is closed properly.

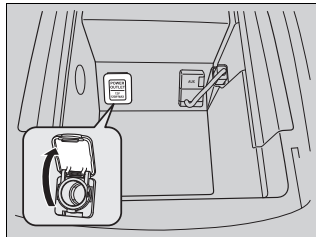
## Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1.



### Accessory power socket (next to the shift lever)

Slide the lid forward until it latches to use it.



### Accessory power socket (console compartment)

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Accessory Power Sockets

### NOTICE

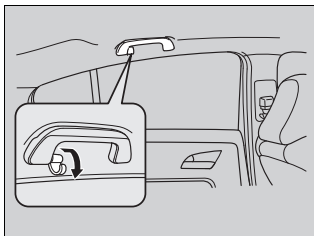
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

When both sockets are being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 120 watts (10 amps).

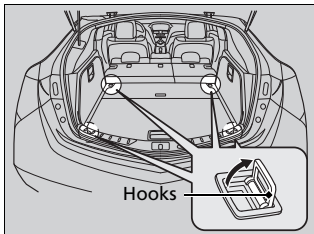
To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

### Coat Hooks



There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles. Pull them down to use them.

### Cargo Hooks



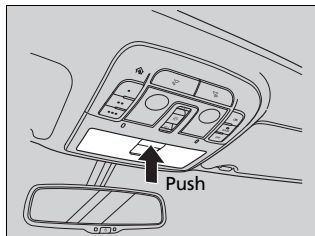
Use the floor cargo hooks to secure luggage in the cargo area.

### Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.



## Sunglasses Holder



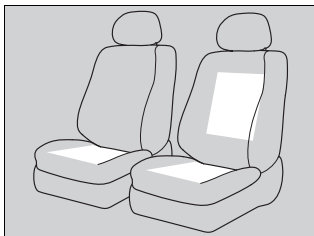
To open the sunglasses holder, push on the lid. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

## ☒ Sunglasses Holder

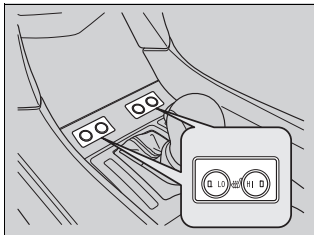
Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

## Front Seat Heaters\*



The ignition switch must be in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup> to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.

There is no heater in the passenger's seat-back due to the side airbag cutoff system.



While in HI, the heater cycles on and off.

- The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

## Front Seat Heaters\*

### **⚠ WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

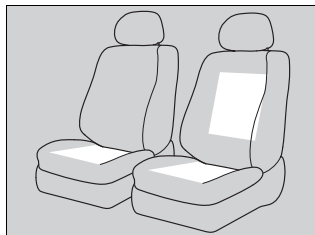
Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation\*



If the power mode is in ON:

**Seat heater** - The HI setting heats the seats faster than the LO setting.

There is no heater in the passenger's seatback due to the side airbag cutoff system.

**Seat ventilation** - The HI setting ventilates the seats faster than the LO setting.

Press the seat heater or the seat ventilation button:

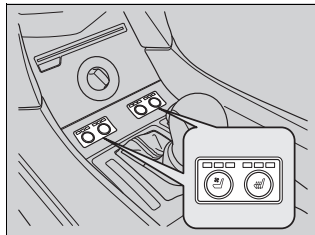
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)

Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)

Three times - The LO setting

Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When a comfortable temperature is reached while using the seat heaters in HI, select MID or LO to keep the seat warm.



## Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation\*

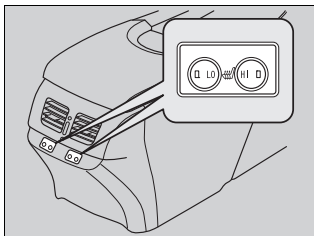
### **⚠ WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters and the seat ventilation even in LO when the engine is OFF. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

## Rear Seat Heaters\*



If the ignition switch is in ON [II]\*1: The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.

There is no heater in the rear center seating position.

While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

- The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ⊠ Rear Seat Heaters\*

### ⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

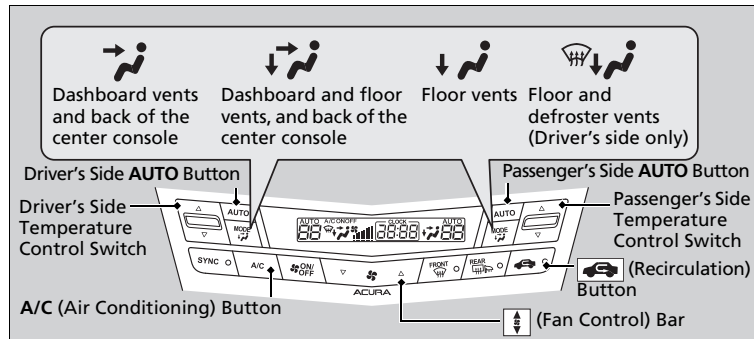
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the driver's or passenger's **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control switch.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** button to cancel.

### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the **(Recirculation)** button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation Mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh Air Mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in **AUTO**, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

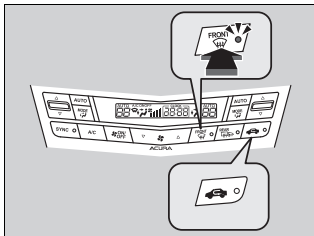
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.


If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on **AUTO**, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.


When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

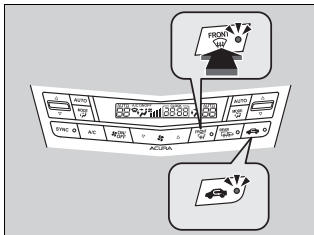
## Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the  (windshield defroster) button turns the air conditioner system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

### To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

### Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

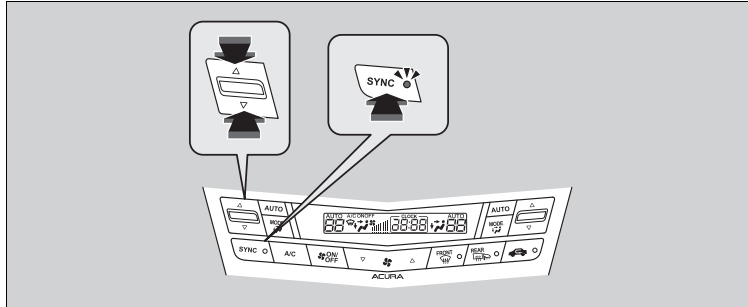
If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

### To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Synchronized Mode




You can set the temperature and mode control synchronously for the driver side and the passenger side in synchronized mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
  - ▶ The system will switch to synchronized mode.
2. Adjust the temperature and mode control using driver's side temperature control switch and mode control button.

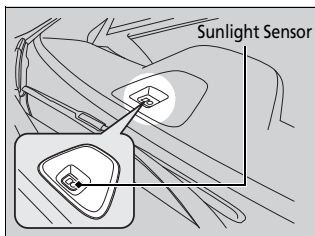
Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

### ☒ Synchronized Mode

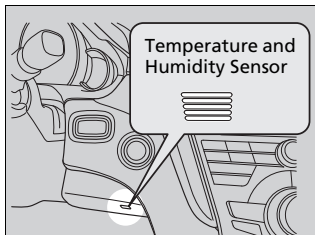
When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronized mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature, the passenger's side temperature and mode control can be set separately.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with a sunlight sensor, an interior temperature and humidity sensor. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.





# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features on models without the navigation system.

## Audio System

About Your Audio System.....	168
USB Adapter Cable .....	169
Auxiliary Input Jack .....	169
Audio System Theft Protection .....	170

## Audio System Basic Operation

Adjusting the Sound .....	172
Playing the AM/FM Radio .....	173
Playing the XM® Radio .....	175
Playing a CD .....	177
Playing an iPod®.....	180
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	183
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio.....	186

## Audio Error Messages

CD Changer.....	188
iPod®/USB Flash Drive.....	189

## Audio Remote Controls

### General Information on the Audio System

XM® Radio Service .....	191
Recommended CDs .....	192
Compatible iPod® and USB Flash Drives.....	194

### HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

Training HomeLink .....	195
-------------------------	-----

## *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

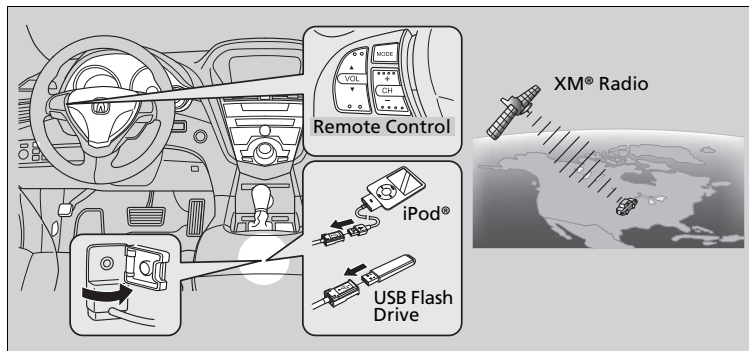
Using HFL .....	197
HFL Menus .....	199

## About Your Audio System

On models with the navigation system, see the Navigation System Manual for operation of the audio system, AcuraLink<sup>®</sup>, Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> HandsFreeLink<sup>®</sup>, and voice commands for these features.

The audio system features AM/FM radio and the XM<sup>®</sup> Radio service. It can also play CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, iPods<sup>®</sup>, USB flash drives, and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, or the remote controls on the steering wheel.



Features

### About Your Audio System

XM<sup>®</sup> Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on XM<sup>®</sup> Radio, contact a dealer.

#### General Information on the Audio System P. 191

XM<sup>®</sup> Radio is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

XM<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio, Inc.

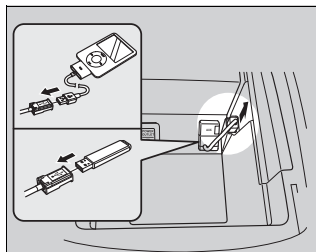
Video CDs, DVDs, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark owned by Apple Inc.

MP3 and AAC are standard audio compression formats. WMA is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft Corporation.



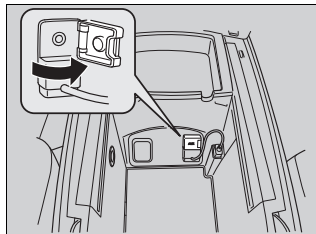
## USB Adapter Cable



1. Unclip the USB connector and loosen the adapter cable.
2. Install the iPod® dock connector or the USB flash drive to the USB connector.

## Auxiliary Input Jack

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.



1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
  - ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

### ⊗ USB Adapter Cable

- Do not leave the iPod® or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable with the USB adapter cable.
- Do not connect the iPod® or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod®, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod® or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

### ⊗ Auxiliary Input Jack

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to the AUX mode by pressing the **AUX** button.

You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.

State or local laws may limit the circumstances in which you can launch or control your attached audio device.

## Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead.

### ■ Entering the audio security code

**ENTER CODE** appears on the display when the power is reconnected.



1. Turn on the audio system.
2. Enter the audio security code using the preset buttons. If you enter an incorrect digit, continue to the last digit, then try again. If you do not enter the code correctly after 10 tries, you need to visit a dealer to have the system reset.

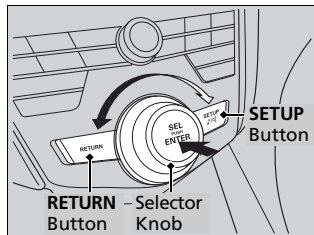
### ☒ Audio System Theft Protection

Find the audio system's security code and serial number on the radio code card.


Do not store the card in your vehicle. If you lose the radio code card, you must obtain the information from a dealer.

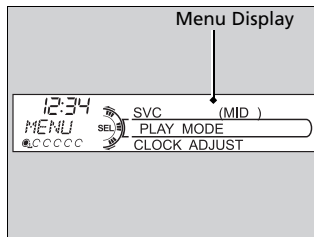
# Audio System Basic Operation


To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1.





Use the selector knob or **SETUP** button to access some audio functions.

Press  to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions. The extended display has three segments to display detailed information.



**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press  to set your selection.


**SETUP//  button:** Press to select any setting such as the clock or sound control.

**RETURN button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

## Audio System Basic Operation

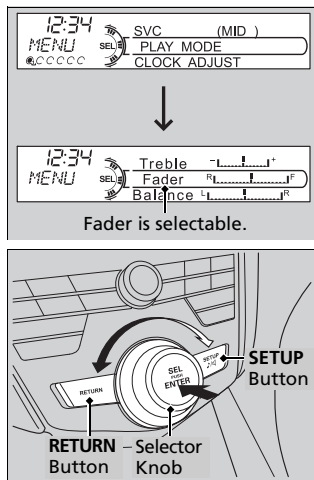
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

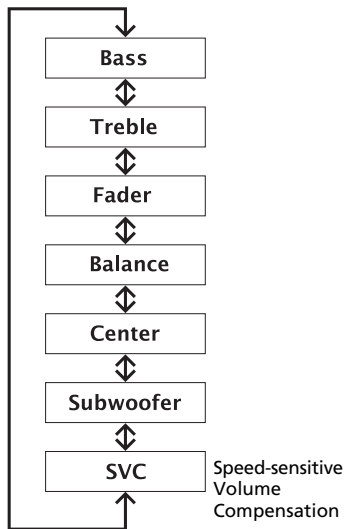
Press  to **ENTER**.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Adjusting the Sound



Press the **SETUP** button, and rotate to select **Sound Settings**, then press . Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



### Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **OFF**, **LOW**, **MID**, and **HIGH**.

**SVC** adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Playing the AM/FM Radio

The diagram shows a car stereo control panel with the following callouts:

- VOL (Volume/Power) Knob**  
Press to turn the audio system ON and OFF.  
Turn to adjust the volume.
- TITLE Button**  
Press to switch the RDS name on and off.
- AM/FM Button**  
Press to select a band.
- SKIP Bar**  
Press to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.
- Selector Knob**  
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
- Preset Buttons (1-6)**  
To store a station:  
1. Tune to the selected station.  
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.  
To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.
- CATEGORY Bar**  
Press either side to display and select an RDS category.
- A.SEL (Auto Select) Bar**  
Press to scan both bands and store the strongest station in each preset.  
To turn off auto select, press the bar again. This restores the presets you originally set.
- SCAN Bar**  
Press to sample each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.  
To turn off scan, press the button again.
- SETUP Button**  
Press to display menu items.

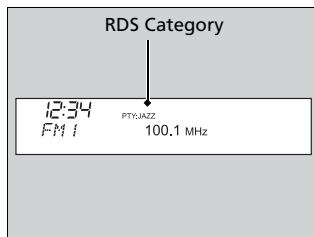
## Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

### ■ RDS INFO ON

Press the **TITLE** button while listening to an RDS capable station. **RDS INFO ON** appears, and the station name is displayed.

### ■ To find an RDS station from your selected program category



1. Press the **CATEGORY** bar to display and select an RDS category.
2. Use **SKIP** or **SCAN** to select an RDS station.

## ▶▶ Playing the AM/FM Radio

The ST indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode  
Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel.

▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 190

You can store six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.

A.SEL function scans and stores up to six AM stations and twelve FM stations with a strong signal in the preset buttons.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies in the preset buttons manually.



## Playing the XM® Radio

### VOL (Volume/Power) Knob

Press to turn the audio system ON and OFF.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

### TITLE Button

Press and release to cycle the display between the name, title, and category.

### (XM®) Button

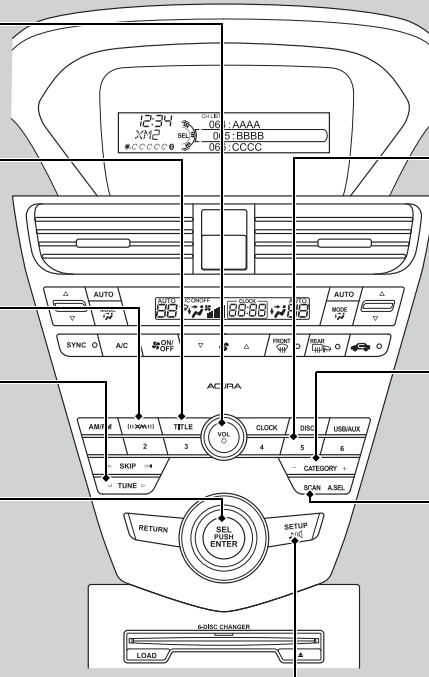
Press to select XM® Radio.

### TUNE Bar

Press either side to select channels.

### Selector Knob

Turn to select channels or category.



### Preset Buttons (1-6)

To store the channel:

1. Select the channel.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select XM, then press the preset button.

### CATEGORY Bar

Press either side to display and select an XM® Radio category.


### SCAN Bar

Press to sample all channels (in the channel mode), or channels within a category (in the category mode). Each sampling continues for a few seconds. Press **SCAN** again to cancel scanning and continue listening to the channel.

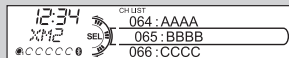
### SETUP Button

Press to display menu items.




## ■ To Play the XM® Radio

1. Press the  button to select the XM® radio band (XM1 or XM2).
2. Press and hold the **TITLE** button to switch between the channel mode and category mode.
3. Select a channel using the **TUNE**, **CATEGORY**, **SCAN** bar, or Preset buttons.

## ■ To Select a Channel from a List



Channel list is shown.

1. Press  to display a channel list.
2. Rotate  to select a channel, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing the XM® Radio

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

You can store twelve XM® stations in the preset buttons. XM1 and XM2 let you store six stations each.

There may be instances when XM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

## Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3 or WMA format. With the **CD** loaded, press the CD button.

**VOL** (Volume/Power) Knob  
Press to turn the audio system ON and OFF.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

**TITLE Button**  
Press to display the text data on a CD (if it was recorded with text data).

**SKIP Bar**  
Press change tracks (files in MP3 or WMA).

**RETURN Button**  
Press to go back to the previous display.

**Selector Knob**  
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

**LOAD Button**  
Press to load a CD.  
Press until you hear a beep and see **LOAD** in the display to load CDs.

**DISC Button**  
Press to play a CD.

**CATEGORY Bar**  
Press to skip to the next folder, and to skip to the beginning of the previous folder in MP3 or WMA.

**SCAN Bar**  
You will get a 10-second sampling of each song.  

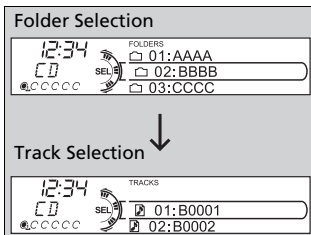
- Press to sample all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3 or WMA).
- Press two times to sample the first file in each of the main folders (MP3 or WMA).
- Press three times to sample the first track on each CD (the first file in the main folder on each disc in MP3 or WMA).
- To turn off scan, press and hold the button.

**SETUP Button**  
Press to display menu items.

**CD Slot**  
Insert a CD about halfway into the CD slot.

**(CD Eject) Button**  
Press to eject a CD.  
Press and hold to eject all CDs.

## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA)



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.
2. Rotate to select a folder.
3. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays **UNSUPPORTED**, then skips to the next file.

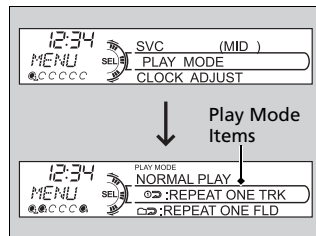
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **PLAY MODE**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **PLAY MODE**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **NORMAL PLAY**, then press .

### ☒ How to Select a Play Mode

Press the **RETURN** button to go back to the previous display, and press the **SETUP** button to cancel this setting mode.

#### Play Mode Menu Items

##### Normal Play

**REPEAT ONE TRK:** Repeats the current track/file.

**REPEAT ONE FLD (MP3/WMA):** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**REPEAT DISC:** Repeats the current CD.

**RANDOM IN FLD (MP3/WMA):** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**RANDOM IN DISC:** Plays all tracks/files in the current CD in random order.

**SCAN TRK:** Samples all tracks/files on the CD.

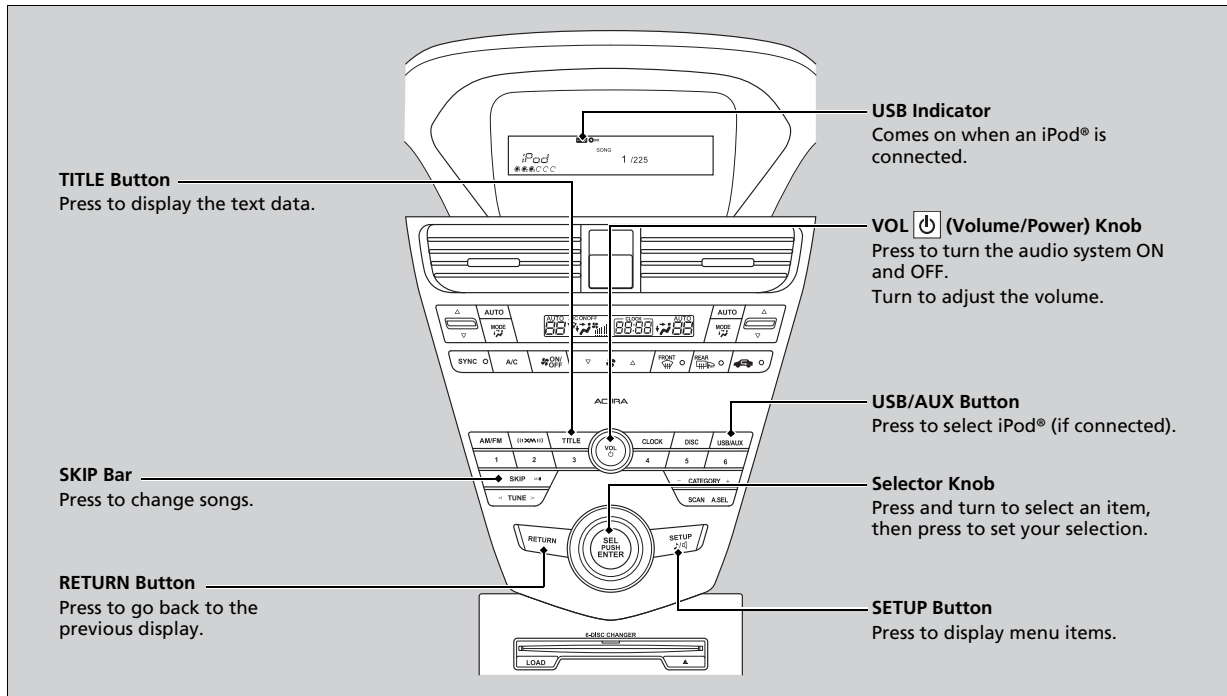
**SCAN FLD (MP3/WMA):** Samples the first file in each folder on the CD.

**SCAN DISC:** Samples the first track/file on each CD.

## Playing an iPod®

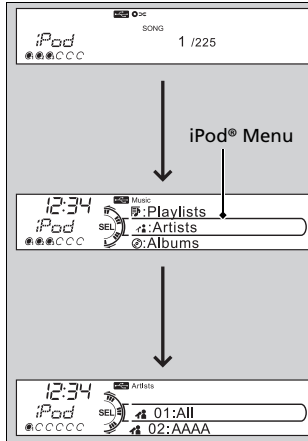
Connect the iPod® using your dock connector to the USB adapter cable, then press the **USB/AUX** button.

▶ **USB Adapter Cable** P. 169



Features

## How to Select a File from the iPod® Menu



1. Press to display the iPod® menu.
2. Rotate to select a menu.
3. Press to display the items on that menu.
4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

### ⊗ Playing an iPod®

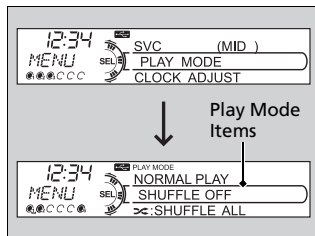
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio display.

**iPod®/USB Flash Drive** P. 189

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **PLAY MODE**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **PLAY MODE**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **NORMAL PLAY**, then press .

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### **NORMAL PLAY**

**SHUFFLE OFF:** Turns off the shuffle mode.

**SHUFFLE ALL:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, or songs) in random order.

**SHUFFLE ALBUM:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, or songs) in random order.

**REPEAT OFF:** Turns off the repeat mode.

**REPEAT ONE TRK:** Repeats the current track.

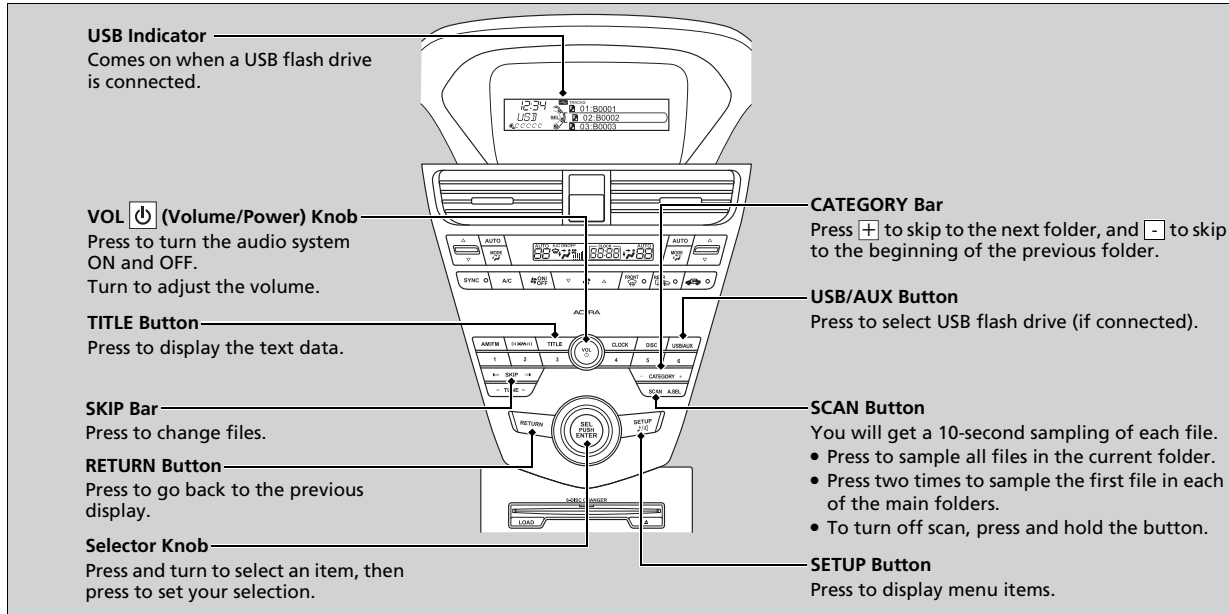


## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format.

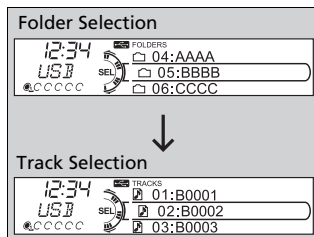
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB adapter cable, then press the **USB/AUX** button.

▶ **USB Adapter Cable** P. 169



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes® are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.
2. Rotate to select a folder.
3. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 191

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) are not played.

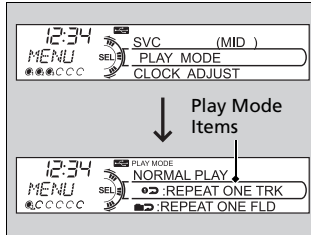
The audio system displays **UNPLAYABLE FILE**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio display.

▶ **iPod®/USB Flash Drive** P. 189

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **PLAY MODE**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **PLAY MODE**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **NORMAL PLAY**, then press .

### How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

#### **NORMAL PLAY**

**REPEAT ONE TRK:** Repeats the current file.

**REPEAT ONE FLD:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**RANDOM IN FLD:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**RANDOM ALL:** Plays all files in random order.

**SCAN TRK:** Samples all files in the current folder.

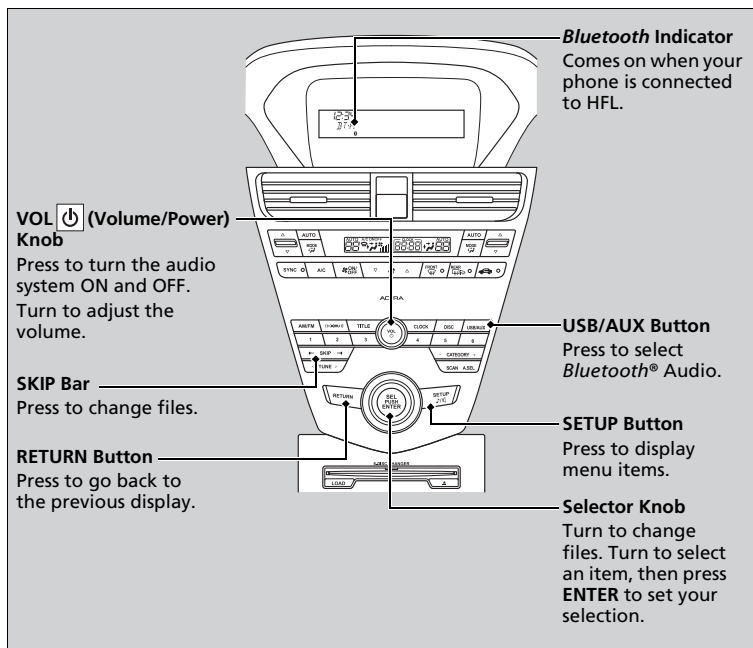
**SCAN FLD:** Samples all first file in each folder.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*®-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 201



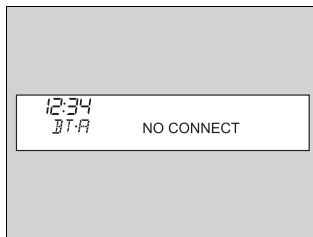
### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. You can find an approved phone by visiting [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or by calling the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at (888) 528 - 7876. In Canada, visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call (888) 528 -7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.
2. Press the **USB/AUX** button.

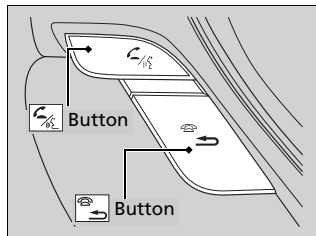
If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, **may be** already linked.

## To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **SETUP** button.
2. Rotate to select **RESUME/PAUSE**, then press .

Each time you press , the setting switches between **PAUSE** and **RESUME**.

## Switching to HFL



Press the (HFL Talk) button on the steering wheel to receive a call when *Bluetooth*® Audio is playing.

▶ *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® P. 197

Press the (HFL Back) button to end the call and return to *Bluetooth*® Audio.

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack, you may need to press the **USB/AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.





Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## Switching to HFL

If you receive a call while *Bluetooth*® Audio is in the pause mode, it will resume play after ending the call.

## CD Changer

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

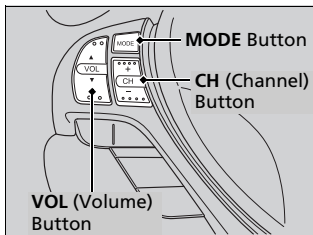
Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the audio system off and allow the changer to cool down until the error message is cleared.</li> </ul>
UNSUPPORTED	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</li> </ul>
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</li> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 193</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
MECHA ERROR		
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc.</li> <li>Insert a different disc.</li> <li>If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li> <li>If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>Do not try to force the disc out of the changer.</p>
CHECK DISC	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 193</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## iPod®/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod® or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>ERROR</b>	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
<b>BAD USB DEVICE PLEASE CHECK OWNERS MANUAL</b>	An incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>UNSUPPORTED VER</b>	Appears when an unsupported iPod® is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod® is connected, update the iPod® software to the newer version.
<b>UNPLAYABLE FILE</b>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>NO SONG</b>	Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive.
<b>UNSUPPORTED</b>	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when the supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

Allows you to operate the audio system while driving.



## MODE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:  
FM1→FM2→AM→XM1→XM2→CD→AUX

## VOL (Volume) Button

**Press:** ▲ Increases the volume.

**Press:** ▼ Decreases the volume.

## CH (Channel) Button

- When listening to the radio
  - Press** [+]: Selects the next preset radio station.
  - Press** [-]: Selects the previous preset radio station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod®, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - Press** [+]: Skips to the next song.
  - Press** [-]: Goes back to the beginning of the current or previous song.

## Audio Remote Controls

The CD mode appears only when a CD is loaded.

When in the AUX mode, the following are operable from the remote controls:

- iPod®/USB flash drive connected to the USB adapter cable
- *Bluetooth*® Audio (with some phones only)




## XM® Radio Service

### Subscribing to XM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription.  
To see the ID in the display: Turn the selector knob until **0** appears.
2. Have your radio ID and credit card number ready, and either call or visit the XM® website to subscribe.

### Receiving XM® Radio

Press the  (XM®) button and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

### XM® Radio Display Messages

**LOADING:** XM® is loading the audio or program information.

**OFF AIR:** The channel is not currently broadcasting.

**UPDATING:** The encryption code is being updated. Channels 0 and 1 still work normally.

**NO SIGNAL:** The signal is too weak in the current location.

-----: No such channel exists, the channel is not part of your subscription, or the artist or title information is unavailable.

**ANTENNA:** There is a problem with the XM® antenna. Contact a dealer.

### Subscribing to XM® Radio

Contact Information for XM® Radio:

US: XM® Radio at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com), or (800) 852-9696

Canada: XM® Canada at [www.xmradio.ca](http://www.xmradio.ca), or (877) 209-0079

### Receiving XM® Radio

The XM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:

- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

## Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



### CDs with MP3 or WMA files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3 or WMA formats may be unsupported.

### Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

## ■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

### ☒ Protecting CDs

#### NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

#### Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs



Bubbled/  
Wrinkled



With Label/  
Sticker



Using  
Printer Label  
Kit



Sealed



With Plastic Ring

- Damaged CDs



Chipped/  
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Poor quality CDs

- Small CDs



3-inch  
(8-cm)  
CD

## Compatible iPod® and USB Flash Drives

### iPod® Model Compatibility

Model
iPod classic ®
iPod ® (5th and 6th generation)
iPod nano ®
iPod touch ®
iPhone ®
iPhone ® 3G

### USB Flash Drives

- Use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

### iPod® Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

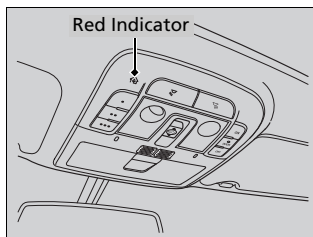
## Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that comes with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

## Training HomeLink



If you have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes. To do this:

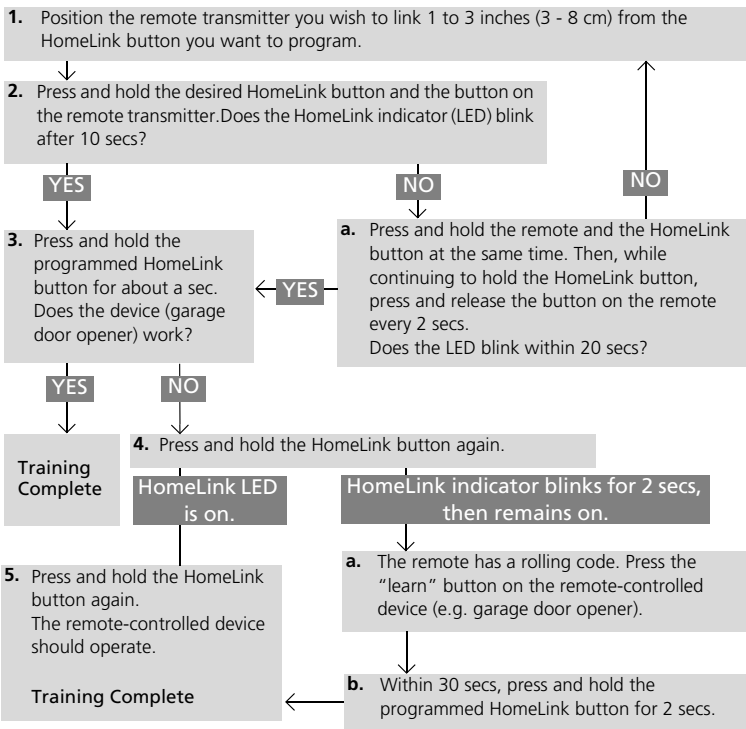
- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

## HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an “electronic eye,” or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.

## Training a Button



Features

## Training HomeLink

### Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

#### Standard transmitter

Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

#### Rolling code transmitter

Indicator blinks rapidly for 2 secs, then remains on for about 23 secs.

2. Continue to hold the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button."

### Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

## Models with navigation system

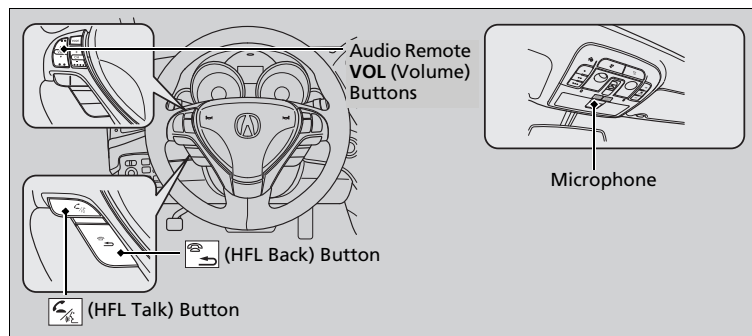
For models with the navigation system, see the Navigation System Manual for how to operate *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®.


## Models without navigation system


*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

## Using HFL

### HFL Buttons



 **Button:** Press to give a command or answer a call.


 **Button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit [www.acura.com/handsfreelink](http://www.acura.com/handsfreelink), or call (888) 528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call (888) 528-7876.

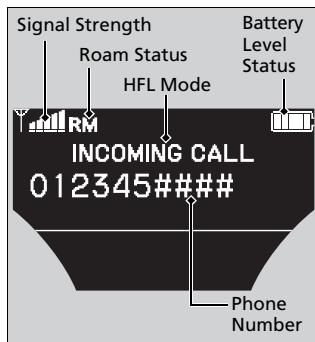
Voice control tips:

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the  button before giving a command. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- A command that consists of several words can be spoken together. For example, say "Call 123-456-7890" at once.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls.

## Help Features

- To hear general HFL information and help, say “Tutorial.”
- Say “Hands free help” any time to get help or hear a list of commands.

## Information Display



The multi-information display notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology  
*Bluetooth®* name and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motors Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt *Bluetooth®* Audio when it is playing. Audio will resume when the call is ended.

## Information Display

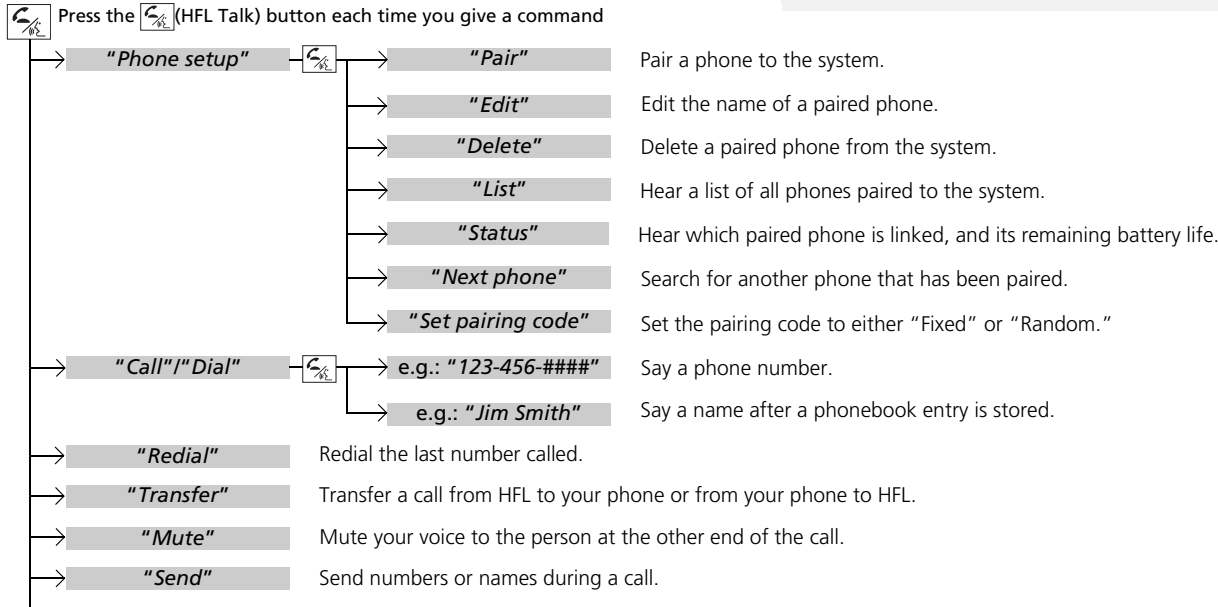
The information that appears on the multi-information display varies between phone models.



# HFL Menu

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1 to use HFL.

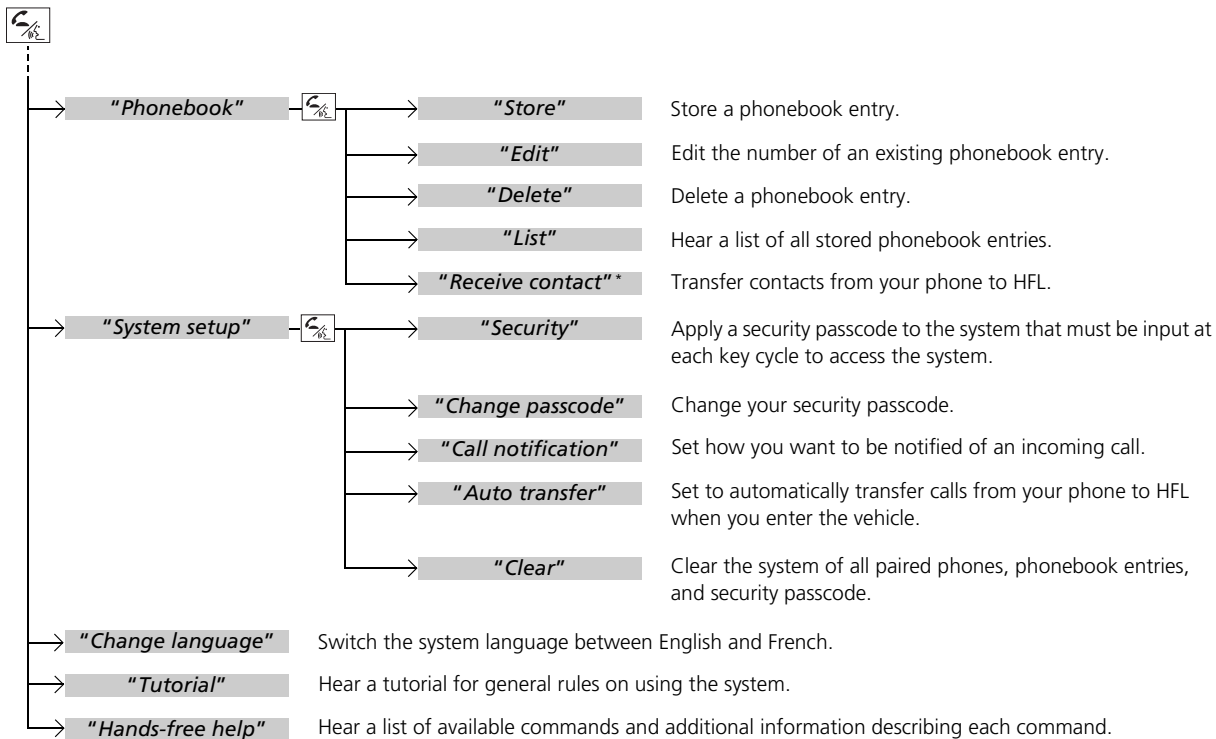
**HFL Menu**  
To use HFL, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.



Features

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Features



## Phone Setup

### ■ To pair a cell phone

1. If no phone has been paired to the system before, HFL gives you information about how to pair the first phone.  
If a phone has already been paired: say "Phone Setup" and "Pair" after the HFL prompts.
2. Follow the HFL prompts and put your phone in discovery or search mode.  
▶ HFL gives you a four-digit code and begins searching for your phone.
3. When your phone finds a *Bluetooth*® device, select HFL from the options and enter the four-digit code.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the newly paired phone.


### ■ To rename a paired phone

1. Say "Phone Setup."
2. Say "Edit" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and rename the phone.  
▶ If there is more than one phone paired to the system, HFL will ask you which phone's name you want to change.

### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Say "Phone Setup."
2. Say "Delete" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts.  
▶ HFL will ask you which phone you want to delete.

### ☒ Phone Setup

Press the  button and wait for a beep before giving a command.

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

#### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Your phone must be in the discovery or search mode when pairing the phone. Refer to your phone's manual.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

■ **To hear the name of all paired phones**

1. Say "Phone Setup."
2. Say "List" after the prompts.
3. HFL reads out all the paired phones' names.

■ **To hear which paired phone is currently linked**

1. Say "Phone Setup."
2. Say "Status" after the prompts.
3. HFL will tell you which phone is linked with the system.

■ **To change the currently linked phone**

1. Say "Phone Setup."
2. Say "Next Phone" after the prompts.
3. HFL disconnects the current phone, and searches for another paired phone.
4. Once another phone is found, it is connected to the system. HFL will inform you which phone is now linked.

■ **To change the pairing code setting**

1. Say "Phone Setup."
2. Say "Set Pairing Code" after the prompts.
3. If you want HFL to create a random code each time you pair a phone, say "Random." If you want to create your own four-digit code, say "Fixed."
4. Follow the HFL prompts.

☒ Phone Setup

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is linked again.

The "Status" and "Next Phone" commands use: Only one paired phone at a time can be linked to HFL. When there are two or more paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone that the system finds is linked.

## Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number or a name in the HFL phonebook, and redial the last number called.

### ■ Direct dialing a phone number

1. Say "Call" or "Dial."
2. Say the number you want to dial after the prompts.
3. Say "Call" or "Dial" after the prompts.


### ■ From the HFL phonebook

1. Say "Call" or "Dial."
2. Say the name stored in the HFL phonebook after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts.


### ■ To redial the last number called by HFL

Say "Redial."

### ■ To end a call

Press the  (HFL back) button.



### ☒ Making a Call

Press the  button and wait for a beep before giving a command.


HFL uses a Class 2 *Bluetooth*, with has a maximum range of about 30 feet (10 meters).

HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch. However, this may weaken the vehicle's battery.


## ■ Receiving a Call

Press the  button to answer the call, or the  button to hang up. When there is an incoming call, a call notification (if activated) sounds and a message appears on the display.

## ■ Transferring a Call

You can transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL. Press the  button and say “Transfer.”

## ■ Muting a Call

To mute or unmute your voice during a call, press and release the  button and say “Mute.”

## ■ Sending Numbers or Names During a Call


You can send numbers and names during a call. This is useful when calling a menu-driven phone system.


### ■ To send a number or name during a call

1. Say “Send.”
2. Say the number or name you want to send after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts.


## ☒ Receiving a Call

### Call Waiting

Press the  button and put the original call on hold to answer the incoming call.



Press the  button again to return to the original call.

Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the original and answer the incoming call.

## ☒ Sending Numbers or Names During a Call

Press the  button before a command.

To send a , say “Pound.” To send a , say “Star.”

## HFL Phonebook

You can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers in HFL. The numbers you store can be account numbers or passwords. These numbers can be sent to a menu-driven call.

### ■ To store a phonebook entry

1. Say "Phonebook."
2. Say "Store" after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to list as your phonebook entry.
4. Say the number you want to store for the name entry.
5. Follow the HFL prompts and say "Enter" to store the entry.

### ■ To edit the number stored for a name

1. Say "Phonebook."
2. Say "Edit" after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to edit. When asked, say the new number for that name.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and say "Enter" to store the entry.

### ■ To delete a name

1. Say "Phonebook."
2. Say "Delete" after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to delete.
4. Follow the HFL prompts.

## ☒ HFL Phonebook

- Avoid using duplicate name entries.
- Avoid using "home" as a name entry.
- It is easier for HFL to recognize a multisyllabic or longer name. For example, use "Peter" instead of "Pete," or "John Smith" instead of "John."

■ **To list all names in the phonebook**

1. Say "Phonebook."
2. Say "List" after the prompts.
3. HFL begins reading the names in the order they were stored.
4. When you hear a name you want to call, say "Call."

■ **To store a specific phone number from your cell phone directly to the HFL phonebook\***

1. Say "Phonebook."
2. Say "Receive Contact" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts, select a number from your cell phone, and send it to HFL.
  - ▶ If it is not the number you want to store, say "Discard."
4. Say the name for that number.
5. Follow the HFL prompts to continue.



## System Setup

This command group allows you to change or customize HFL basic settings.

### ■ To set a four-digit passcode to lock the HFL system for security

1. Say "System Setup."
2. Say "Security."
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the four-digit number of your choice.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and confirm the number.


### ■ To change the security passcode

1. Say "System Setup."
2. Say "Change Passcode" after the prompts.
3. Say the new four-digit passcode after the HFL prompts.
4. Follow the HFL prompts.

### ■ To select a ring tone or a prompt as the incoming call notification

1. Say "System Setup."
2. Say "Call Notification" after the prompts.
3. Say "Ring Tone" or "Prompt" after the prompts. For no audible notification, say "Off."

## System Setup

Press the  button before a command.

Once a passcode is set, you are required to enter the passcode with every new key cycle to use HFL. If you forget the code, go to your dealer to have the passcode reset. You can also cancel the passcode by clearing all the data stored in the HFL system.

➤ **To clear the system** P. 208

The default setting of the incoming notification is a ring tone.

### ■ To activate or deactivate the auto transfer function

The call on your cell phone can be automatically transferred to HFL when you get into the vehicle and turn on the ignition.

1. Say "System Setup."
2. Say "Auto Transfer" after the prompts. HFL lets you know the current status.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to change the setting.

### ■ To clear the system

Paired phones, all stored or imported phonebook data, and any passcodes are erased.

1. Say "System Setup."
2. Say "Clear" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts.


### ■ Change Language\*

You can set the system language to French or English.

1. Say "Change Language."
2. Follow the HFL prompts.

If you have not named your paired phone in the selected language, HFL will ask you to name it in that language.

#### System Setup

Press the  button before a command.

You can clear the system when you have forgotten the passcode and cannot access HFL. When HFL asks you for the passcode, say "System Clear."

#### Change Language\*

Press the  button before a command.

**Quick Language Selection**  
If you want to change the language, to French for example, say "Français," and follow the prompt.



# Driving

This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

## Before Driving

Driving Preparation .....	210
Maximum Load Limit.....	213

## Towing a Trailer

Towing Preparation.....	215
Driving Safely with a Trailer .....	218
Towing Your Vehicle.....	219

## Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

General Information.....	220
Important Safety Precautions.....	220
Avoiding Trouble .....	221

## When Driving

Starting the Engine .....	223
Precautions While Driving .....	226
Automatic Transmission .....	227
Shifting.....	228
Cruise Control* .....	232
ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)* .....	235
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist), aka ESC (Electronic Stability Control), System .....	243
SH-AWD® (Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™) .....	245
BSI (Blind Spot Information)* .....	246
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) ..	248
IDS (Integrated Dynamics System)*... ..	252

## Braking

Brake System .....	253
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System).....	255
Brake Assist System .....	256
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)* .....	257

## Parking Your Vehicle

Rearview Camera* .....	262
------------------------	-----

## Refueling

Fuel Economy.....	266
-------------------	-----

## Accessories and Modifications

.....	267
-------	-----

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 300
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert key if the water freezes in the hole.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
    - ✎ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 213
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the tailgate.
  - ✎ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 111
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 143
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 145
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 141
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 140

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - ▶ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 31
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - ▶ **Indicators** P. 68

## Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 830 lbs (380 kg).  
See Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	XXXX/XXXX XXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	
REAR	XXXX/XXXX XXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	
SPARE	XXXX/XXXX XXX	XXXKPA, XXPSI	

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.  
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

- 1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
- 2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- 3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- 4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.  
(1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

### Maximum Load Limit

## ⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

#### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):

The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

▶ Specifications P. 350

#### Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):

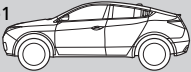


The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

▶ Specifications P. 350

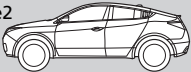


- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

**Load Limits Example**

<p><b>Example1</b></p>  <p><b>Max Load</b> 830 lbs (380 kg)</p>	$\cong$		$+$	
		<p><b>Passenger Weight</b> 150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)</p>		<p><b>Cargo Weight</b> 530 lbs (244 kg)</p>

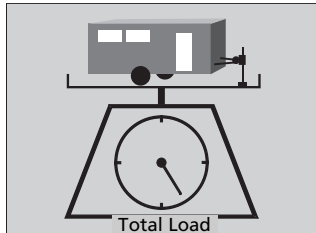
<p><b>Example2</b></p>  <p><b>Max Load</b> 830 lbs (380 kg)</p>	$\cong$		$+$	
		<p><b>Passenger Weight</b> 150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs (68 kg x 5 = 340 kg)</p>		<p><b>Cargo Weight</b> 80 lbs (40 kg)</p>



## Towing Preparation

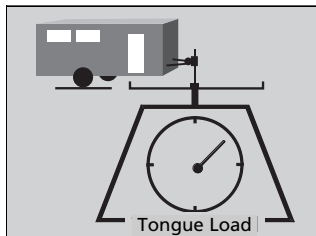
### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it must not exceed 1,500 lbs (680 kg). Towing loads in excess of this can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.



#### ■ Tongue load

The weight of the tongue with a fully loaded trailer on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight.

- Excessive tongue load reduces front tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

### ⊠ Towing Load Limits

## ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

**Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.**

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the tongue load.

#### Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km).

Never exceed the gross weight ratings.

Gross weight information

⊠ **Vehicle Specifications** P. 350

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Hitches

The hitch must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet. If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system, as it will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Trailer light

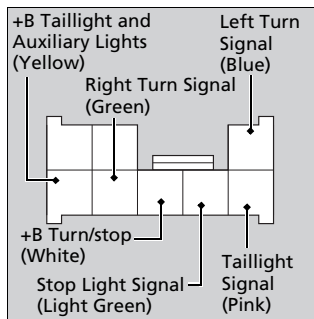
Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

## ☒ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.



Your trailer lighting connector is located under the right side tool case in the cargo area. Each pin's purpose and wiring color code are shown in the image.

When using a non-Acura trailer lighting harness and converter, get the connector and pins for your vehicle from a dealer.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

Many states and provinces/territories require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

## Driving Safely with a Trailer

### ■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  - **Towing Load Limits** P. 215
- Securely attach the hitch, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tires, including the spare.

### ■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **D** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

### ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

### ▣ Driving Safely with a Trailer

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

## Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn off the air conditioning and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.
- Shift to the **[S]** position if the transmission shifts frequently.

## Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

📖 **Emergency Towing** P. 344

## ⊗ Driving in Hilly Terrain

If you use the paddle shifters when driving uphill and downhill, select 2nd or 3rd gear, depending on the vehicle speed and road conditions. Do not use 4th, 5th and 6th gears.

## General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

## Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store cargo properly and do not exceed your cargo load limits.
  - **Maximum Load Limit** P. 213
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

### Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

#### **WARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers can be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a roll over.

- **Important Handling Information** P. 24
- **Precautions While Driving** P. 226

## Avoiding Trouble

---

- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tires, and check the tire pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.

- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tires as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

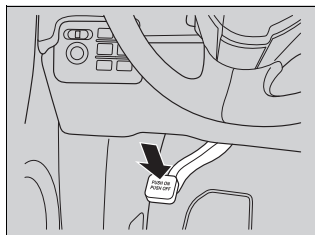
📄 **Towing Hook** P. 344

📄 Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

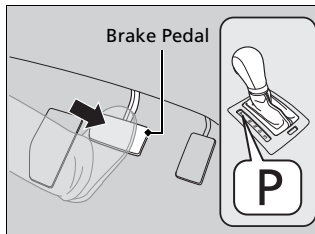
Spinning the tires can also damage the SH-AWD system.



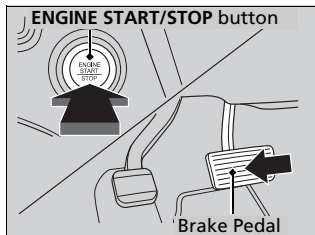
## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



### Models with keyless access remote

3. You can start the engine in any power mode. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button and the brake pedal.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

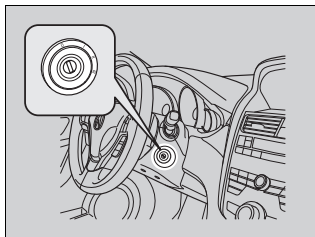
If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

### Models with keyless access remote

Insert the keyless access remote into the slot if the battery in the key is weak.

### If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak P. 327

The engine may not start if the keyless access remote is subjected to strong radio waves.



**Models without keyless access remote**

3. Turn the ignition switch to START **III** without depressing the accelerator pedal.

## Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the brake system indicator has gone off.

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 253

2. Put the shift lever in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

**Models with keyless access remote**

## Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Shift to **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with your foot on the brake pedal.

## Starting the Engine

**Models with keyless access remote**

You do not need to hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

- Depending on the outside temperature, the starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts. If you hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.
- If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

**Models without keyless access remote**

Do not hold the key in START **III** for more than 15 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 10 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 10 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➤ **Immobilizer System** P. 120

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist feature helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to **D** or **S** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

The brakes remain engaged briefly as you release the brake pedal.

#### ⊗ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

## Precautions While Driving

### ■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the center of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy cargo on the roof.

### ■ In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or cause electrical component failure.

### ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

### ⊗ Precautions While Driving

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY [I] or LOCK [0]<sup>\*1</sup> while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in [N], as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

### ⊗ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a roll over.

⊗ **Important Handling Information** P. 24

⊗ **Off-Highway Driving Guidelines** P. 220

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Automatic Transmission

---

### ■ Creeping

The following conditions cause the engine to run at high revolutions, and increase creeping:

- Immediately after the engine starts.
- When the climate control system is in use.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

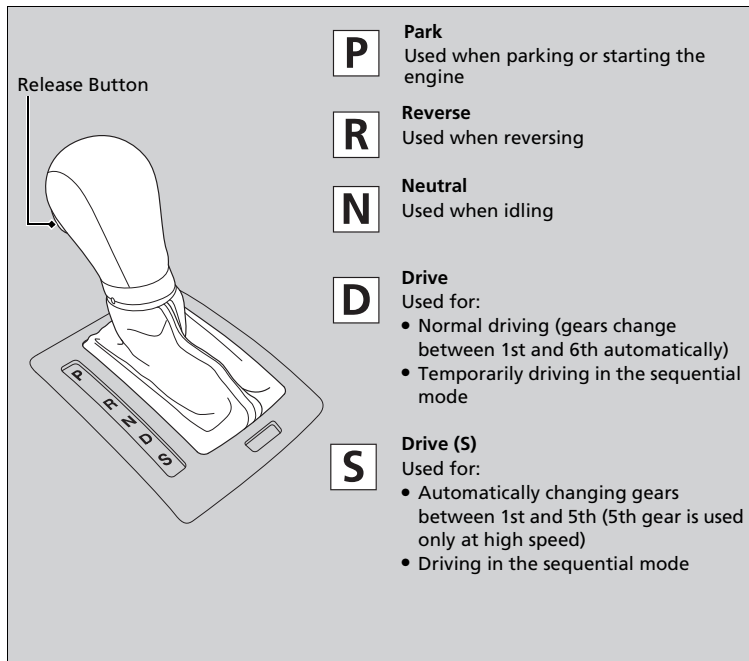
### ■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



### ☒ Shifting

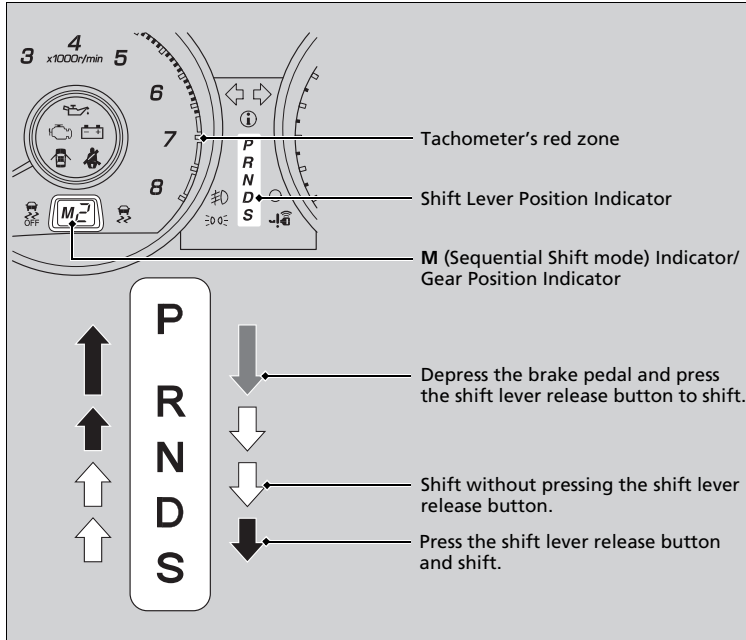
You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O]<sup>\*1</sup> and remove the key<sup>\*1</sup> unless the shift lever is in [P].

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold. Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Shift Lever Operation



## Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking **D** indicator indicates a transmission problem. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

## Sequential Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 6th gears without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission will switch to the sequential shift mode.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **D**:

The vehicle will go into the sequential shift mode momentarily, and the gear position indicator will come on.

Once you start traveling at a constant speed, the sequential shift mode will automatically switch off, and the gear position indicator will go off.

Hold the **+** paddle shifter for two seconds to return to normal drive.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **S**:

The vehicle will go into the sequential shift mode, and the **M** (sequential shift mode) indicator and gear position indicator will come on. At speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or less, the vehicle automatically shifts down into 1st gear. When you accelerate from a stop, the transmission starts in first gear, and shifts from first to second automatically.

You can only pull away in 1st or 2nd gear.

When switching out of the sequential shift mode, move the shift lever from **S** to **D**. When the sequential shift mode is canceled, the **M** indicator and gear position indicator go off.

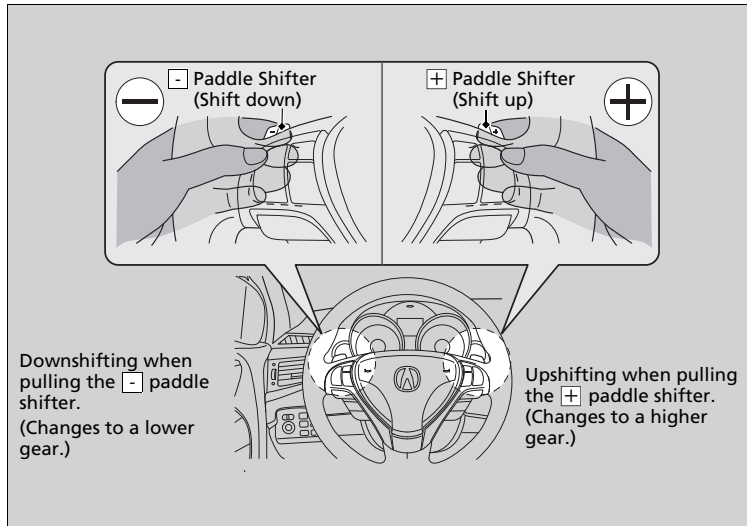


### ■ Second gear lock mode

If you pull the **+** paddle shifter while stopped or driving at 6 mph (10 km/h) or less, the gear position will be locked in 2nd gear. This makes it easier to pull away on slippery surfaces such as snow covered roads.

To cancel the 2nd gear lock mode, pull the **-** paddle shifter, or move the shift lever from **S** to **D**.

### ■ Sequential Shift Mode Operation



### ▣ Sequential Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single gear change.

To change gears continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next gear.

#### Recommended Shift Points

Use this table as a guideline for efficient fuel economy and effective emission control.

Shift Up	Normal Acceleration
1st to 2nd	15 mph (24 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	25 mph (40 km/h)
3rd to 4th	40 mph (64 km/h)
4th to 5th	45 mph (72 km/h)
5th to 6th	50 mph (80 km/h)

If the gear position indicator blinks when you try to shift up or down, this means your vehicle speed is not in its allowable gear shifting range. Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

## Cruise Control\*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

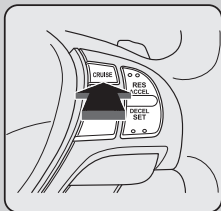
Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.

- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

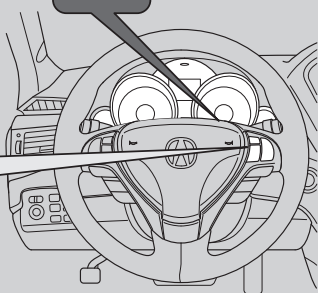


### How to use

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



**CRUISE MAIN** is on in the instrument panel.  
Cruise control is ready to use.



### ⊗ Cruise Control\*

## ⚠ WARNING

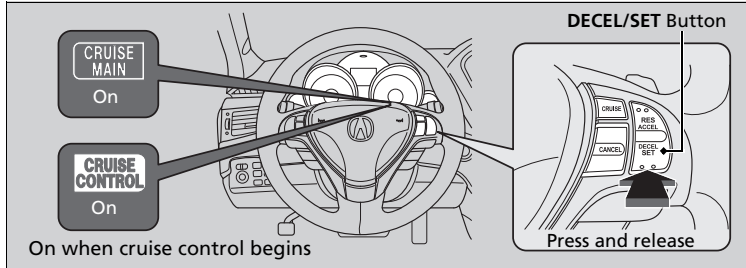
Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

## To Set the Vehicle Speed

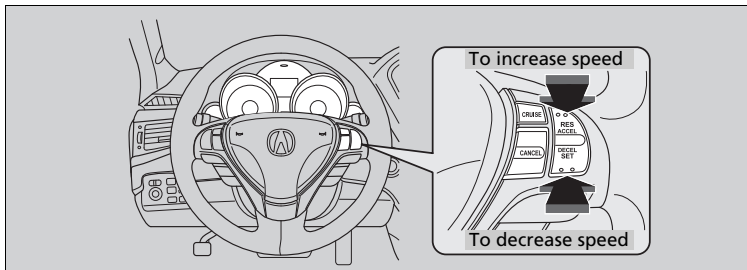


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **DECEL/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **DECEL/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

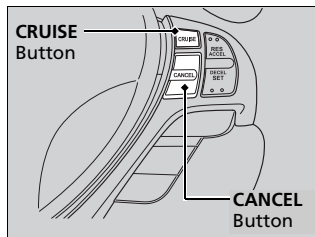
## To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

## To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **DECEL/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/ACCEL** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 25 mph (40 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

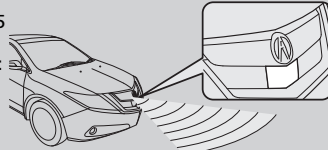
## ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)\*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed and a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you without having to keep your foot on the brake pedal or accelerator.

### When to use

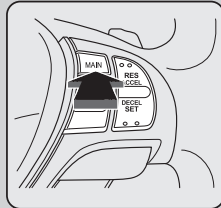
- Vehicle speed for adaptive cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~
- Shift positions for adaptive cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

The radar sensor is under the emblem in the front grille.



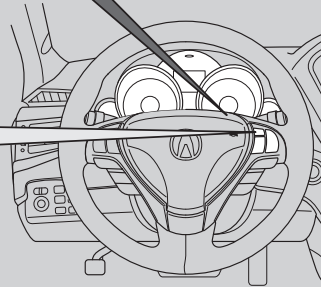
### How to use

- Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.



ACC

ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.  
Adaptive cruise control is ready to use.



### ⚠ ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

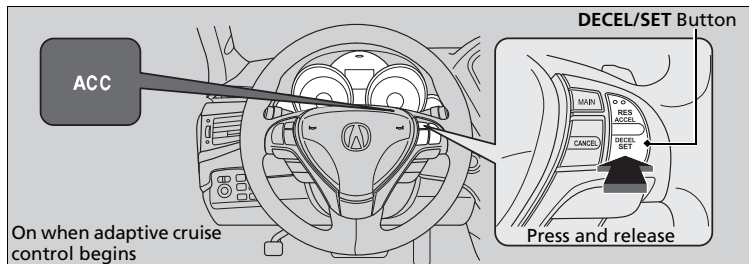
### Important Safety Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Inappropriate use of ACC can result in a serious accident. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

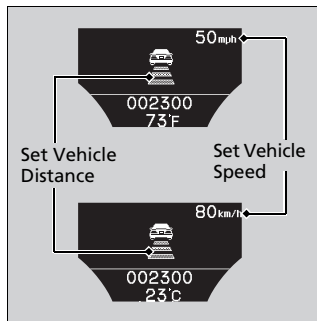
The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the CMBS™ (collision mitigation braking system™).

- ▶ **CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\*** P. 257

## To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **DECEL/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.



The moment you release the **DECEL/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and adaptive cruise control begins.

- ▶ A vehicle icon and distance bars appear on the multi-information display.

## ⊗ ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)\*

Do not use ACC under these conditions:

- In poor visibility.
- In heavy traffic.
- When you must slow down and speed up repeatedly.
- On winding roads.
- When you enter a toll gate, interchange, service area, parking area, etc. In these areas, there is no vehicle ahead of you, but ACC would still try to accelerate to your set speed.
- In bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- On a slippery road (for example a road covered with ice or snow).
- When a spare tire is installed.
- When going down a steep hill where the engine braking does not work sufficiently.

When not using adaptive cruise control: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button.

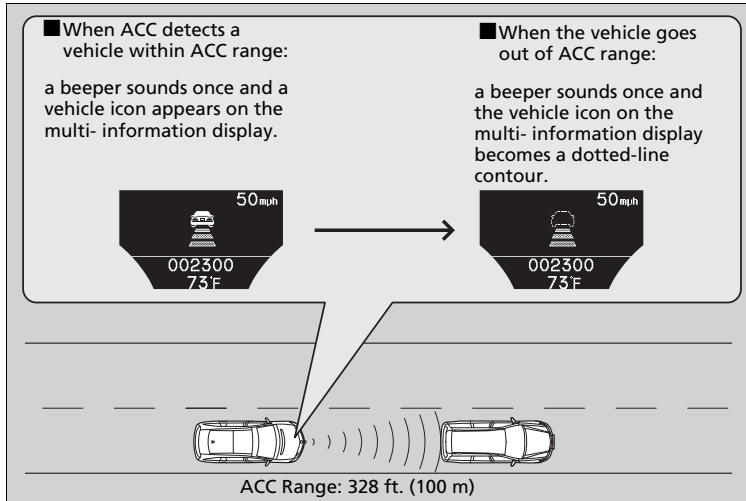
## ⊗ To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the multi-information display between mph and km/h.

- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 94

## When in Operation

The radar sensor monitors the distance between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead of you. When the sensor detects a change in distance, the system compensates it by accelerating or braking your vehicle in order to maintain the cruising speed you previously set.



## When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display to alert you.

Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.

### CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\* P. 257

If the CMBS™ has been turned off, there is no audible or visible alert available.

Even if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is short, CMBS™ may not alert you or ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than your vehicle.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually distancing.

If you do not want to hear a beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range, you can change the pre-running detect car beep setting.

### Customized Features P. 94

■ **There is no vehicle ahead**

Your vehicle cruises at the set speed.

■ **A vehicle ahead is within ACC range and going slower than the set speed**

Your vehicle slows down, and maintains the same speed as the speed of the vehicle ahead.

■ **A vehicle ahead is within ACC range and going at a steady speed**

Your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead of it, keeping a constant distance, without going beyond the set speed.

■ **A vehicle ahead goes out of range**

ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ **When you depress the accelerator pedal**

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alerts even if a vehicle is in ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.

⌘ When in Operation

**Limitations**

Use the brake pedal to maintain a safe distance with other vehicles in the following cases. ACC may not work properly when:

- Vehicles ahead of you are going slower than 13 mph (20 km/h) or vehicles are parked.
- Motorcycles or other small vehicles are ahead of you.

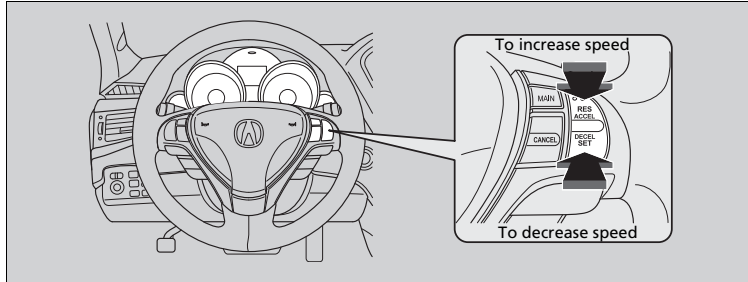
ACC may momentarily apply brakes or sounds a beep against a vehicles beside you or even a building beside you if:

- You drive at a sudden curve or on a narrow road.
- You abruptly move the steering wheel.
- You are in an unusual position within your lane.



## To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



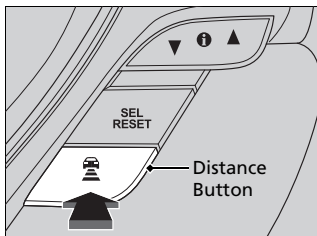
- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.


## ☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

You can set the vehicle speed using the **DECEL/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.




## To Change Vehicle Distance



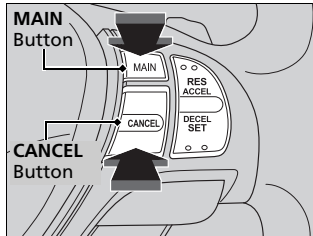
Press the  (distance) button to change ACC range.

Each time you press the button, the ACC range for the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you changes to short, middle and long.

The faster you select the set speed, the longer the short, middle or long distance becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Vehicle Distance	When the Set Speed is:	
	50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
 Short	85 feet 26 meters	101 feet 31 meters
 Middle	111 feet 34 meters	173 feet 53 meters
 Long	154 feet 47 meters	200 feet 61 meters

## To Cancel



To cancel adaptive cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ ACC indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.

## Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display when ACC is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC cancellation:

- The vehicle speed slows down to 22 mph (35 km/h) and below.
- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS or VSA is activated.
- When the VSA indicator comes on.

## To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled adaptive cruise control, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/ACCEL** button when driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.


You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40km/h)
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off


## Automatic cancellation

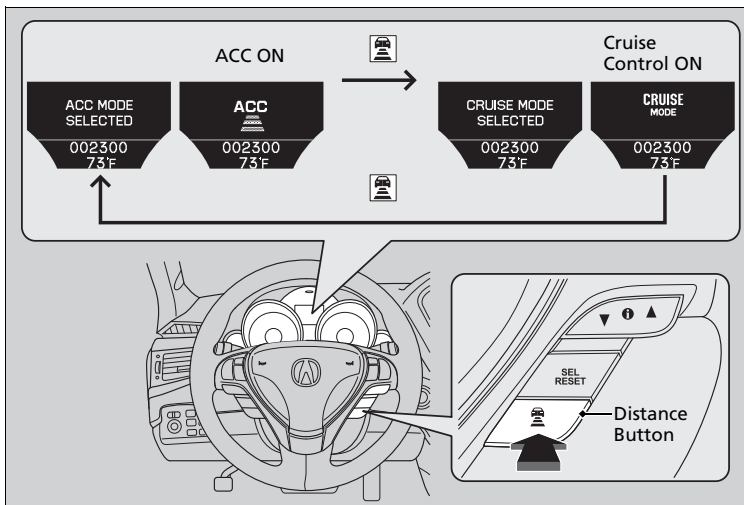
Even though adaptive cruise control has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **RES/ACCEL** button.

## ■ To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Press and hold the  (distance) button for one second.

**CRUISE MODE SELECTED** appears on the multi-information display for two seconds, and then the mode switches to CRUISE.

To switch back to ACC, press and hold the  button again for one second.



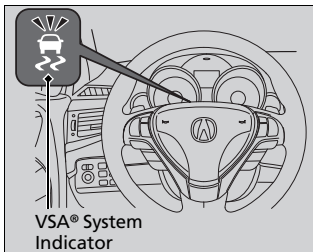
## ☒ To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, be more cautious about keeping a safe distance from a vehicle ahead of you.

## VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist), aka ESC (Electronic Stability Control), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### ⊠ VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist), aka ESC (Electronic Stability Control), System

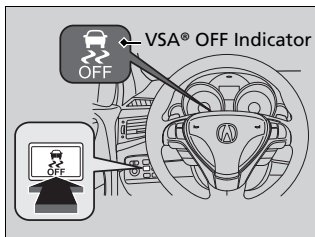
The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.


The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

## VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To turn the VSA® system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

VSA® will stop and the indicator will come on.

To turn it on again, press the  (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.


## VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist), aka ESC (Electronic Stability Control), System

Without VSA®, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA® traction and stability enhancement.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

When the VSA® system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® and traction control systems switched off.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on or blinks, the VSA® system comes on automatically. In this case, you cannot turn the system off by pressing the  button.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

## SH-AWD® (Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™)

The system controls and transfers varying amounts of engine torque to each wheel in accordance with the driving conditions.

SH-AWD® helps to enhance driving stability, and lets you handle situations like slippery surfaces, such as snow, sand, mud, and steep hill, better than when driving with two wheel drive. However, the system does not help to enhance braking. Be precautious about the following:

- It is still your responsibility to drive safely when you steer, accelerate, and apply brakes.
- Leave a sufficient margin when braking on slippery surfaces.

### ⊠ SH-AWD® (Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™)

#### NOTICE

Avoid continuously driving in sand or mud where a wheel is likely to spin out, and do not drive once the **SH-AWD®** indicator starts blinking. Driving continuously under such conditions can damage the system's torque distribution unit.

Do not drive through deep water.

The SH-AWD® system may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

## BSI (Blind Spot Information)\*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as “blind spots.”

When vehicles in adjacent lanes are approaching your vehicle from behind, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

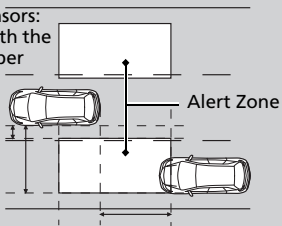
### ■ How the system works

- The shift lever is in **D** or **S**.
- Your vehicle speed is between 6 mph (10 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

#### Alert zone range

- A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)
- B: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)
- C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)

Radar Sensors:  
underneath the  
rear bumper  
corners



### ■ When the system detects a vehicle

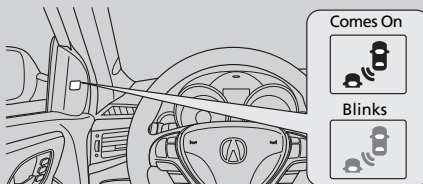
BSI Alert Indicator: Located near the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Blinks when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle.



Comes On



Blinks



### ⚠ BSI (Blind Spot Information)\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death. Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, BSI has limitations. Over reliance on BSI may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The BSI alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **BLIND SPOT NOT AVAILABLE** multi-information display appearing.
- The BSI alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

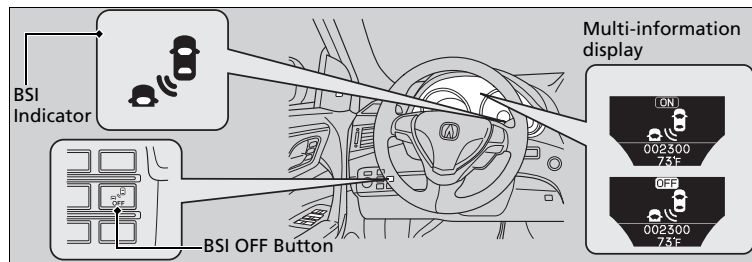


## BSI On and Off

Press the **BSI OFF** button until you hear a beep to turn on and off the system. A message on the multi-information display appears for five seconds and indicates that the system is on or off.

When BSI is off, the BSI indicator in the instrument panel stays on.

BSI stays off next time you start the engine, if you turned it off the last time you drive the vehicle.



## BSI (Blind Spot Information)\*

The BSI alert indicator may not come on under following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.

Turn the system off when towing a trailer. The system does not work properly for the following reasons:

- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the BSI alert indicators to come on.

BSI may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc..) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).

For a proper BSI use:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

## TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

Monitors the tire pressure while you are driving. If your vehicle's tire pressure becomes significantly low, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

### Tire Pressure Monitor



To select the tire pressure monitor, turn the ignition switch to ON \*1 and press the button until you see the tire pressure screen.

If all the tire pressures are normal, **TIRE PRESSURE OK** and the pressure of all four tires will be displayed.

The pressure for each tire is displayed in PSI (U.S.) or kPa (Canada).

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

#### If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks P. 337

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:

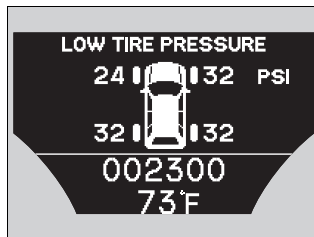
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.


The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

### Tire Pressure Monitor

The pressure displayed on the multi-information display can be slightly different from the actual pressure as measured by a gauge. If there is a significant difference between the two values, or if the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and the message on the multi-information display do not go off after you have inflated the tire to the specified pressure, have the system checked by a dealer.

**TPMS ERROR** may appear if you drive with the compact spare tire, or there is a problem with the TPMS.



If any tire has low pressure, **LOW TIRE PRESSURE** is displayed on the multi-information display. Check the pressure of each tire by pressing the  button.



**CHECK TIRE PRESSURE** is displayed when a tire has significantly low pressure. The specific tire is displayed on the screen.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

---

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

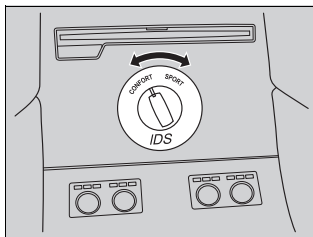
Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## IDS (Integrated Dynamics System)\*

Constantly controls your vehicle's dampers and power steering assist according to current road conditions, vehicle speed, and steering operation.

You can choose between two modes, sport mode and comfort mode, according to your driving taste.

### ■ IDS mode switching



Turn the switch to select from the two driving modes:

**SPORT** - The system prioritizes handling response for higher handling performance.

**COMFORT** - The system prioritizes driving comfort according to the road surface.

### ⊠ IDS (Integrated Dynamics System)\*

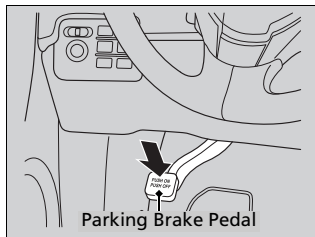
IDS (Integrated Dynamics System) controls the dampers and power steering assist, using the following two main systems:

- Active Damper System - Electronically controls the dampers to enhance riding comfort, handling precision, and tire to road adhesion.
- ECPS (Electronically Controlled Power Steering) System - Changes the amount of steering assist to enhance steering operation.

## Brake System

### Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



**To apply:**

Push the pedal down with your foot.

**To release:**

Push the pedal again.

### ⊗ Parking Brake

**NOTICE**

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **RELEASE PARKING BRAKE** appears on the multi-information display.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

To prevent the parking brake from freezing when the outside temperature is extremely cold, do not apply it, but do the following:

Put the shift lever in **[P]**, then use a block or other wheel chock to stop the wheels from turning.

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 256

➤ **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)** P. 255

## ☒ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.



## ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

### ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

### ⊗ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the ABS indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:

- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tire chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

## Brake Assist System

---

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

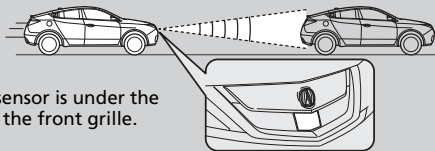
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with the vehicle in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you, then reduce your vehicle speed when a possible collision is likely unavoidable to help minimize collision severity.

### ■ How the system works

A radar sensor starts to detect if there is a vehicle in front of you when your vehicle speed is above 10 mph (15 km/h).



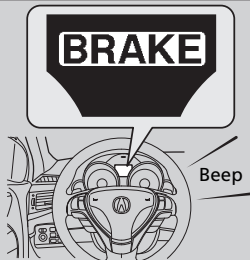
The radar sensor is under the emblem in the front grille.

The CMBS™ activates when the speed difference between the two vehicles becomes more than 10 mph (15 km/h) with a chance of a collision.

### ■ When the system activates

A visual alert or a combination of a visual alert and an audible alert for a possible collision.

- Take appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



### ☒ CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\*

#### Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.


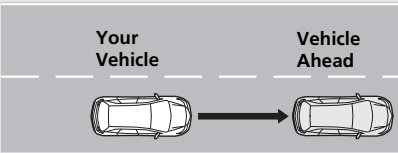

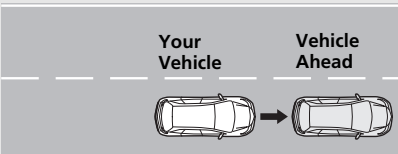

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under the following conditions:

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- When you drive on a curved or winding road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- When there are pedestrians or animals in front of your vehicle.

\* Not available on all models

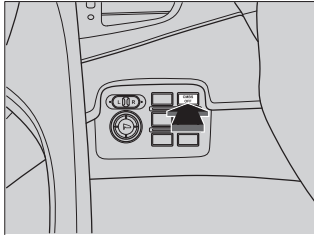
## Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on the circumstances, CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™			
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	E-pretensioner	Audio & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	—	<b>BRAKE</b> flashes on the multi-information display. A beep sounds and <b>BRAKE</b> flashes on the multi-information display.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Retracts the driver's seat belt gently a few times, providing a physical warning. 	Flashes on the multi-information display.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.	Forcefully tightens driver and front passenger seat belts. 		Forcefully applied

Driving

## CMBS™ On and Off



Press this button for about one second to turn on and off the system.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The beeper sounds.
- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the multi-information display reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you start the engine.

## CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\*

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator comes and stays on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road for an extended period.
- You drive with the parking brake applied.
- You drive in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The radar sensor cover is blocked by dirt, mud, dry leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.)

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS™ to shut off improve, the system comes back on.

## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

### ■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

### ■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve.

## ⊠ CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™)\*

Avoid the following conditions that may cause the radar aim to be temporarily out of range and prevent the CMBS™ from working properly.

- A heavy load in the rear or modifications to the suspension tilts your vehicle.
- The tire pressures are not correct, the tire sizes are incorrect, the tire types are different, and/or the tires are not in good condition.

For a proper CMBS™ use:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the emblem or replace the emblem.

Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted.

### When Stopped

1. Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if parked on an incline.

### Parking

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly with the shift lever in **[D]**.
2. Apply the parking brake while holding the brake pedal down.
3. Move the shift lever to **[P]**.
4. Turn off the engine.

#### ⌘ Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

#### ⌘ When Stopped

##### NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **[P]** before the vehicle stops completely.

#### ⌘ Parking

Raise the wiper arms when snow is expected.

## About Your Rearview Camera

### Models with navigation system

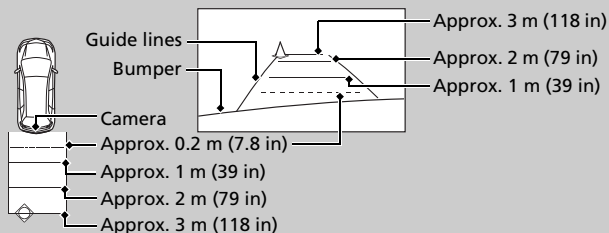
For models with the navigation system, see the Navigation System Manual.

### Models without navigation system

An image of the rear view is shown in your vehicle's rearview mirror when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

## Rearview Camera Display Area

### Screen display



The rearview camera has a unique lens that makes objects appear closer or further than they actually are.

### About Your Rearview Camera

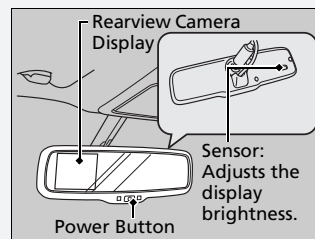
The view provided by the rear camera is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper and what is underneath the bumper.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive on before backing up. Do not rely on the rearview display, which does not give you complete information.

Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can turn off the rearview display while the shift lever is in **R**. Press the power button.

The rearview display is turned on every time you shift to **R**, even if you turned it off the last time.



The rearview mirror gets hot if the rearview display is used for an extended period.



## Fuel Information

### ■ Fuel recommendation

#### Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 91 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with pump octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade gasoline can lead to engine damage.

### ■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

### ■ Gasoline containing ethanol

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

### ⊗ Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

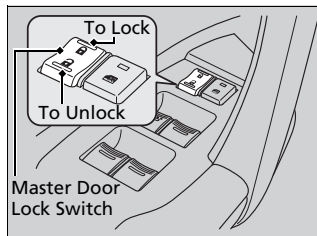
Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit My Acura at [owners.acura.com](http://owners.acura.com). In Canada, visit [www.acura.ca](http://www.acura.ca) for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 21.00 US gal (79.5 liters)**

## How to Refuel



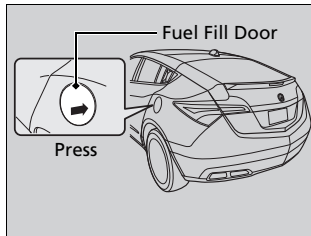
1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch.
  - ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.

How to Refuel

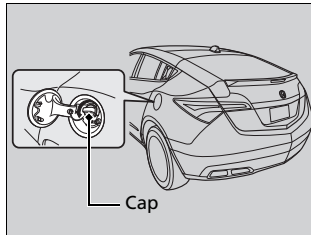
### **⚠ WARNING**

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

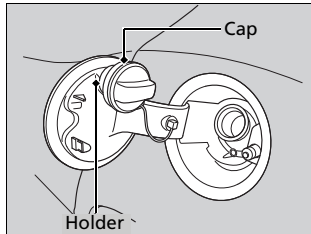
- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



4. Press the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click.



5. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.



6. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
7. Insert the filler nozzle fully.
- ▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
8. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
- ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

#### How to Refuel

Use the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.

The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

#### NOTICE

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the fuel nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

## Improving Fuel Economy

Fuel economy depends on several conditions, including driving conditions, your driving habits, the condition of your vehicle, and loading. Depending on these and other conditions, you may or may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the multi-information display.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### Improving Fuel Economy

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

Miles driven	÷	Gallons of fuel	=	Miles per Gallon		
100	×	Liter of fuel	÷	Kilometers driven	=	L per 100 km

In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit <http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/>

### Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - ▣ **Fuses** P. 338
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

### Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle or use non-Acura components that can affect its handling, stability, and reliability.

Overall vehicle performance can be affected. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

#### Accessories and Modifications

### **WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Acura Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance .....	270
Safety When Performing Maintenance.....	271
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service .....	272

## Maintenance Minder™ .....

## Maintenance Under the Hood

Maintenance Items Under the Hood .....	277
Opening the Hood .....	278
Engine Compartment Covers .....	279
Recommended Engine Oil .....	280
Oil Check .....	281
Adding Engine Oil .....	282

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter .....	283
Engine Coolant .....	285
Transmission Fluid .....	287
Brake Fluid .....	288
Power Steering Fluid Check .....	289
Refilling Window Washer Fluid .....	290

## Replacing Light Bulbs .....

## Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades .....

## Checking and Maintaining Tires

Checking Tires .....	300
Tire and Loading Information Label .....	301
Tire Labeling .....	301

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles) .....	303
Wear Indicators .....	305
Tire Service Life .....	305
Tire and Wheel Replacement .....	306
Tire Rotation .....	307
Winter Tires .....	308

## Battery .....

## Remote Transmitter Care .....

## Climate Control System Maintenance .....

## Cleaning

Interior Care .....	313
Exterior Care .....	315

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.) Refer to the separate maintenance booklet for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the automatic transmission fluid level monthly.
  - **Automatic Transmission Fluid** P. 287
- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake Fluid** P. 288
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 300
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 291
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 298

### Inspection and Maintenance

#### U.S. models

**Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display.

➤ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 275

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at [www.techinfo.honda.com](http://www.techinfo.honda.com).

➤ **Authorized Manuals** P. 358

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.



## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

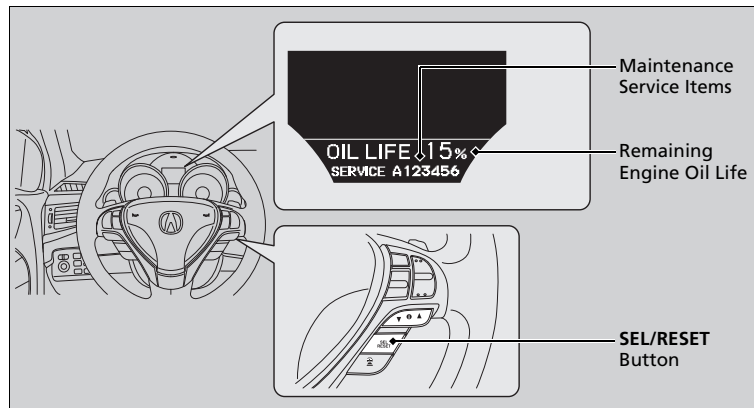
The use of Acura genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Acura genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Acura vehicles.

If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the multi-information display every time you turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

## To Use Maintenance Minder™

### ■ Displaying the Engine Oil Life

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1.
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the multi-information display.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ☒ Displaying the Engine Oil Life




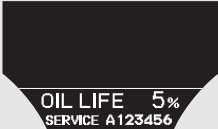


Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the multi-information display.

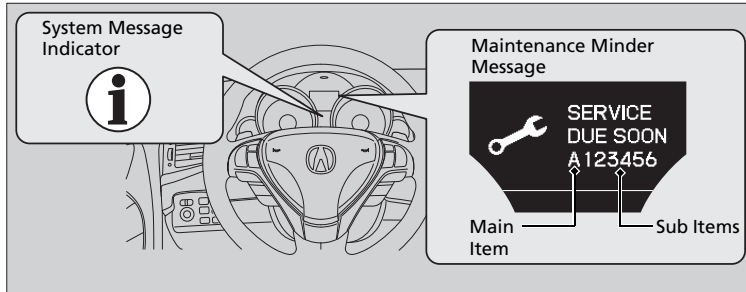
☒ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 275

## Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
 <p><b>SERVICE DUE SOON</b> SERVICE DUE SOON A 123456</p>	<p>15 %</p> 	<p>The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the ▲/▼ (information) button, this message will go off.</p>	<p>The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.</p>
 <p><b>SERVICE DUE NOW</b> SERVICE DUE NOW A 123456</p>	<p>5 %</p> 	<p>The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the ▲/▼ button to switch to another display.</p>	<p>The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>
 <p><b>SERVICE PAST DUE</b> SERVICE PAST DUE A 123456</p>	<p>Negative Distance</p> 	<p>The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the ▲/▼ button to switch to another display.</p>	<p>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

The system message indicator (i) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

## Maintenance Service Items



### Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine oil<sup>*1</sup></li> </ul>
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine oil<sup>*1</sup> and oil filter</li> <li>• Inspect front and rear brakes</li> <li>• Check parking brake adjustment</li> <li>• Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots</li> <li>• Inspect suspension components</li> <li>• Inspect driveshaft boots</li> <li>• Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA)</li> <li>• Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids</li> <li>• Inspect exhaust system<sup>#</sup></li> <li>• Inspect fuel lines and connections<sup>#</sup></li> </ul>

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rotate tires</li> </ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace air cleaner element<sup>*2</sup></li> <li>• Replace dust and pollen filter<sup>*3</sup></li> <li>• Inspect drive belt</li> </ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace transmission and transfer fluid</li> </ul>
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace spark plugs</li> <li>• Replace timing belt and inspect water pump<sup>*4</sup></li> <li>• Inspect valve clearance</li> </ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine coolant</li> </ul>
6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace rear differential fluid<sup>*5</sup></li> </ul>

\*1: If the message **SERVICE DUE NOW** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

\*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

\*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

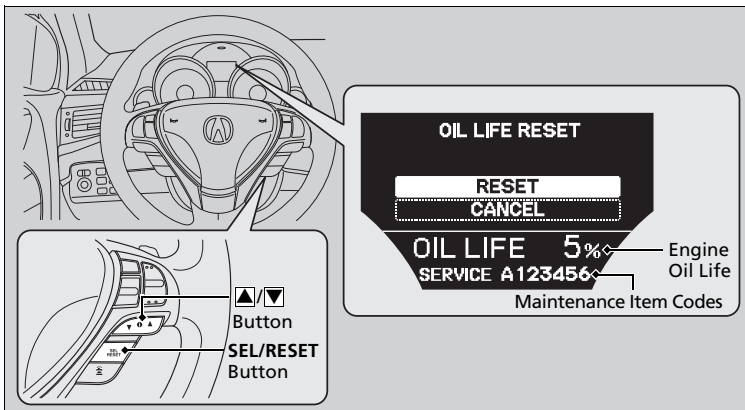
\*4: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110 °F, 43 °C), in very low temperatures (under -20 °F, -29 °C), or tow a trailer, replace every 60,000 miles/100,000 km.

\*5: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher level of mechanical (shear) stress to fluid. This requires differential fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the differential fluid changed at 7,500 miles/12,000 km, then every 15,000 miles/24,000 km.

Continued

## Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil life display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1.
  2. Display the engine oil life by repeatedly pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.
  3. Press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button for 10 seconds or more.
    - The oil life reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
  4. Select **RESET** with the ▲/▼ button.
    - The service code will disappear and the engine oil life display will return to 100%.
- To cancel the oil life reset mode, select **CANCEL**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

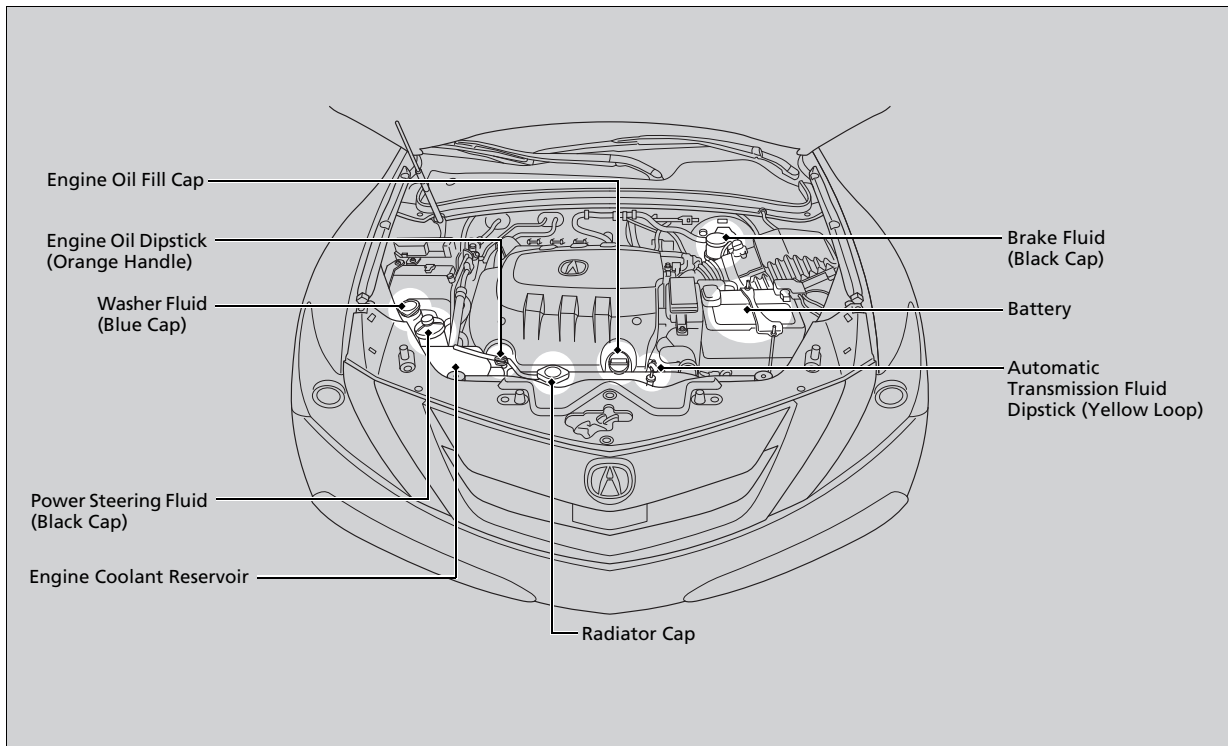
## Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

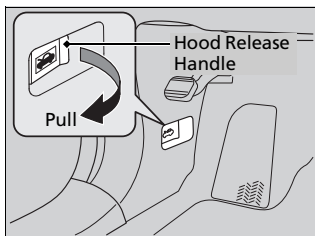
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

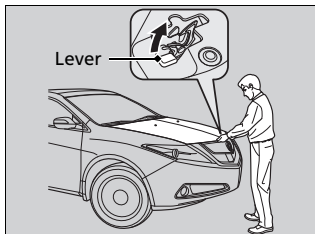
## Maintenance Items Under the Hood



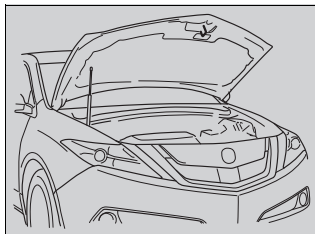
## Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
  - The hood will pop up slightly.



3. Push up the hood latch lever in the center of the hood to release the lock mechanism, and open the hood.



4. Lift the hood up most of the way.
  - The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

When closing, lower it to approximately 12 inches (30 cm), then press down firmly with your hands.

### Opening the Hood

#### NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, and may damage either the hood or the wipers.

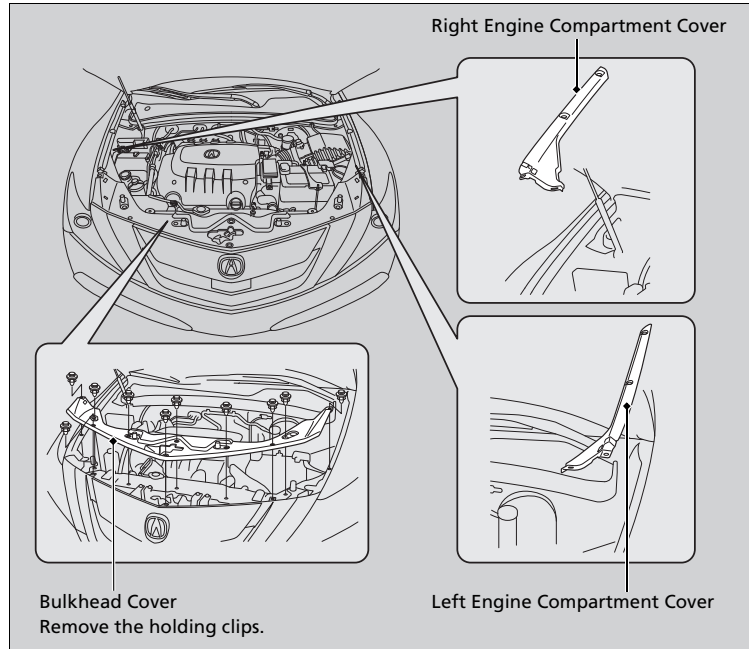
When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



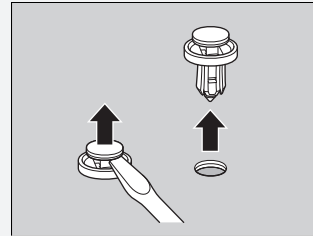
## Engine Compartment Covers

The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by three covers. You may need to remove the covers when you perform certain maintenance work. To remove the covers:

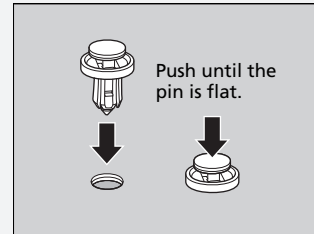


### ✘ Engine Compartment Covers

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the central pin.



When mounting the clip, insert while keeping the central pin of the clip raised, then push until the pin is flat.



## Recommended Engine Oil

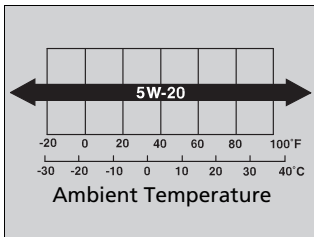
- **Genuine Acura Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

Use a Genuine Acura Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.



### ■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

### ▣ Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

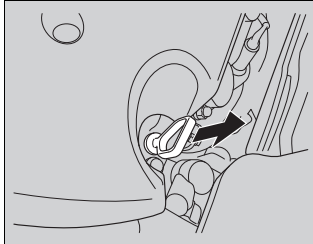
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

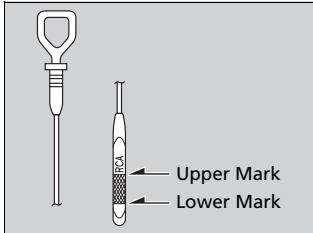
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

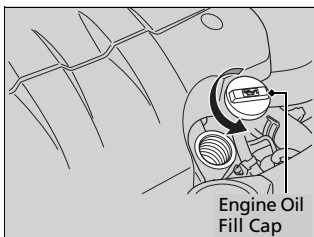


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### ⓘ Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it up immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

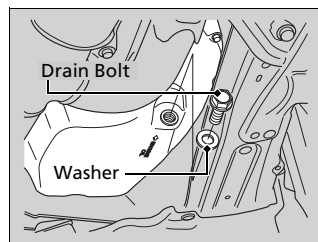
#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

## Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the multi-information display.

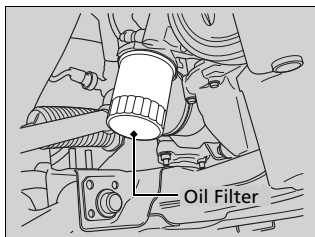


1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

### ⊗ Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

#### NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.



4. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
5. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
  - If it is stuck, you must detach it.
6. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
  - Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil filter rubber seal.
7. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
  - Tightening torque:  
29 lbf-ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
8. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
  - Engine oil change capacity (including filter):  
4.5 US qt (4.3 L)
9. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
10. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
11. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
  - If necessary, add more engine oil.

#### ✘ Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

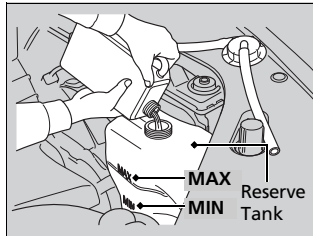
## Engine Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



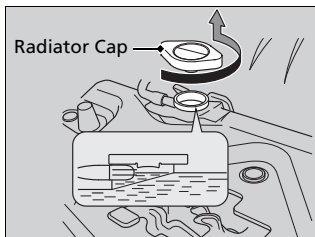
1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### ⊗ Engine Coolant

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## Radiator



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the radiator cap counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

## Radiator

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

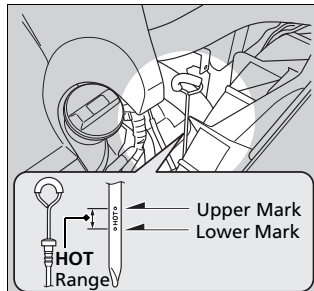


## Transmission Fluid

### Automatic Transmission Fluid

#### Specified fluid: Acura ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)

Check the fluid level when the engine is at normal operating temperature.



1. Park on level ground, and start the engine.
2. Wait until the radiator fan starts and then turn off the engine.
  - Perform step 3 after waiting for about 60 seconds (less than 90 seconds).
3. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission and wipe it with a clean cloth.
4. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely, as shown in the image.
5. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level.
  - It should be between the upper and lower marks in the **HOT** range.
6. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

#### Automatic Transmission Fluid

##### NOTICE

**Do not mix Acura ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Acura ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Acura ATF DW-1 is not covered by Acura's new vehicle warranty.

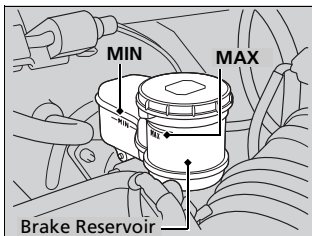
##### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3**

### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

### ☒ Brake Fluid

#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

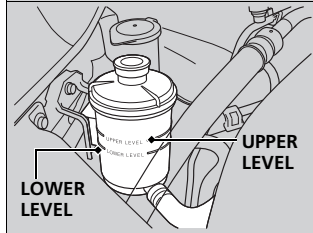
Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Power Steering Fluid Check

**Specified fluid: Acura Power Steering Fluid**

We recommend that you check the power steering fluid level every time you refuel. Check when the engine is not running.



1. Look at the side of the reservoir. The fluid should be between the **UPPER LEVEL** and **LOWER LEVEL**.
2. Add power steering fluid if necessary to the **UPPER LEVEL** mark.
  - ▶ Inspect the system for a leak. If the fluid level goes below the **LOWER LEVEL** frequently, have the system inspected as soon as possible.

### Power Steering Fluid Check

#### NOTICE

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.

#### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the multi-information display. Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ⓘ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.

## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**High/Low beam headlight: 35W (D2S for high voltage discharge type)**

### High/Low Beam Headlights

High voltage can remain in the circuit for a long period of time after the light is switched off. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the high voltage discharge type bulbs yourself. Ask a dealer to inspect and replace high/low beam headlights.

### Headlight Bulbs

#### NOTICE

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

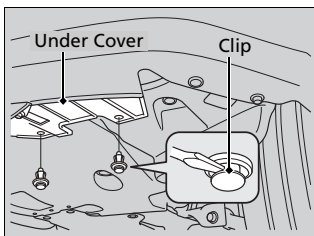
The exterior lights' inside lenses (headlights, brake lamps, etc.) may fog temporarily after a vehicle wash or while driving in the rain. This does not impact the exterior light function.

However, if you see a large amount of water or ice accumulated inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

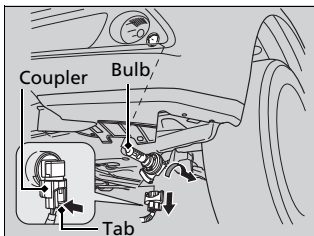
## Fog Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Fog Light: 55 W (H11)**



1. Remove the clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, and lower the under cover.



2. Remove the coupler.
  - It can be removed by pushing the tab.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

### Fog Light Bulbs

#### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

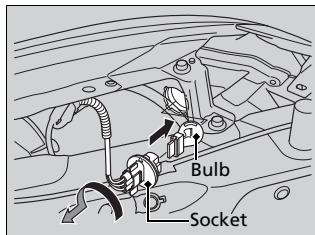
The fog lights are halogen bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

## Front Turn Signal/Parking Light and Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

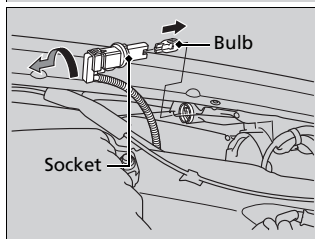
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal/Parking Light: 28/8 W (Amber)**

**Front Side Marker Light: 5W**



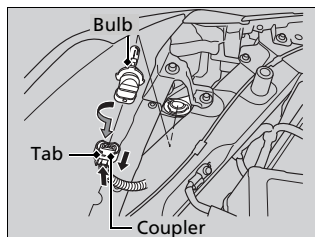
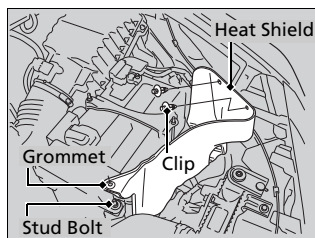
1. Remove the bulkhead cover and engine compartment covers.  
    ➤ **Engine Compartment Covers** P. 279
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



## Daytime Running Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Daytime Running Light: 60 W**



- 1. Driver side:** Remove the holding clips by pushing the center of the clips. Lift the grommet over the stud bolt and rotate the heat shield to the left.  
**Passenger side:** Remove the power steering fluid reservoir by pulling it out of its stay.
2. Remove the bulkhead cover and engine compartment covers.  
► **Engine Compartment Covers** P. 279
3. Remove the coupler.  
► It can be removed by pushing the tab.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into hole and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light Bulbs

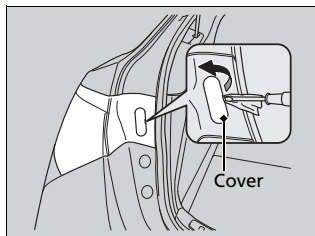
Door mirrors have the side turn lights. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light bulbs.



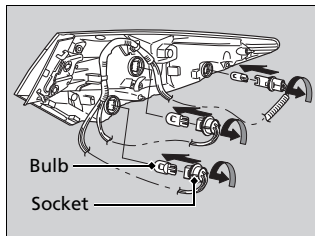
## Stop/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Stop/Taillight: 21/5 W**  
**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W**  
**Rear Side Marker Light: 3 CP**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.

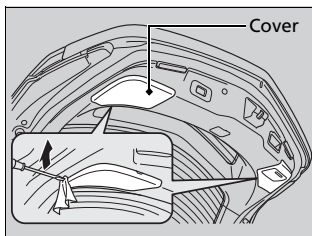


2. Remove the bolts and the rear light assembly.
3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

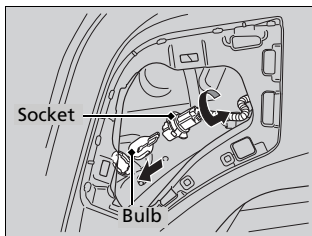
## Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Back-Up Light: 21W**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.

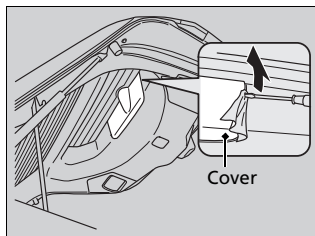


2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert the new bulb.

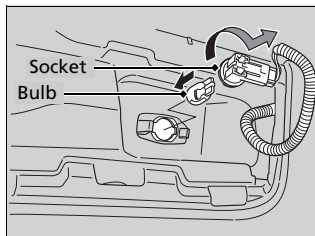
## Rear License Plate Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Rear License Plate Light: 5 W**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.



2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

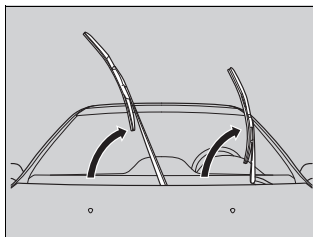
## High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

High-mount brake light bulbs are LED type. Have an authorized Acura dealer inspect and replace the light bulbs.

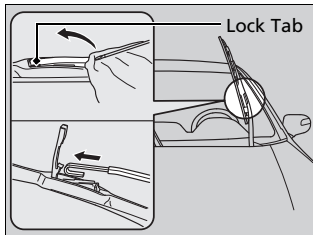
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the metal wiper arm may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

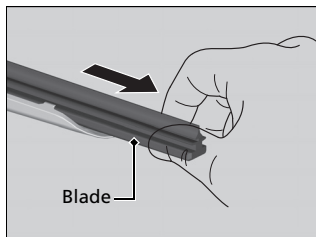


2. Place a cloth on the edge of the lock tab. Push the lock tab up with a flat-tip screw driver.
3. Slide the blade from the wiper arm.

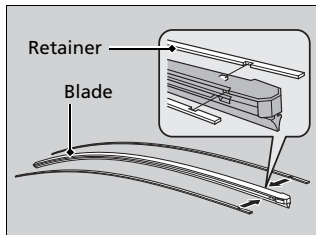
### Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

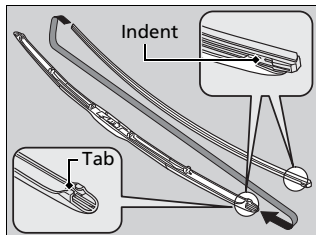
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windshield.



- 4.** Slide the wiper blade out from its holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



- 5.** Remove the retainers from the rubber blade that has been removed, and mount to a new rubber blade.  
 ▶ Correctly align the rubber protrusion and the retainer grooves.



- 6.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.  
 ▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
- 7.** Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
- 8.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

## Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specification's page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.


Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
-  **Wear Indicators** P. 305
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

### ☒ Checking Tires

## ⚠ WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

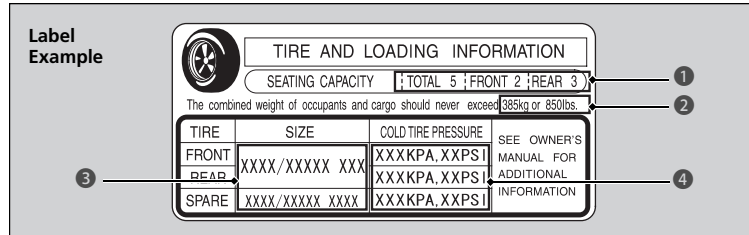
### High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 99 mph or 160 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tire failure.

Tire Size	P255/50R19 103H
Pressure (front)	33 psi (227 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

## Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

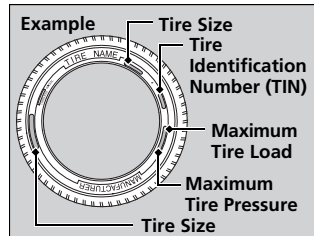


### ▶ Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

- 1 The number of people your vehicle can carry.
- 2 The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
- 3 The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
- 4 The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

## Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

### ▶ Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

#### **P255/50 R19 103H**

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

255: Tire width in millimeters.

50: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

19: Rim diameter in inches.

103: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

H: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

### ■ Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

## ■ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

## ■ Glossary of Tire Terminology

**Cold Tire Pressure** – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

**Load Rating** – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

**Maximum Load Rating** – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure** – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

**Treadwear Indicators (TWI)** – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

## ☒ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

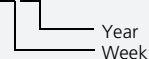
### DOT B97R FW6X 2209

DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.

FW6X: Tire type code.

22 09: Date of manufacture.





## DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:

**Treadwear 200**  
**Traction AA**  
**Temperature A**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### ■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### ■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

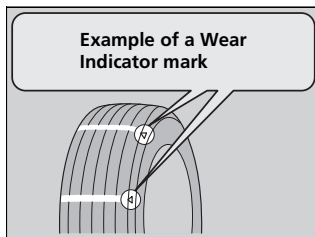
#### ☒ Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

#### ☒ Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.

**Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

## Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and VSA® (vehicle stability assist) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

If you replace a wheel, only use TPMS specified wheels approved for your vehicle.

### ☒ Tire and Wheel Replacement

#### **WARNING**

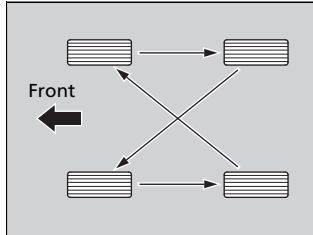
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

## Tire Rotation

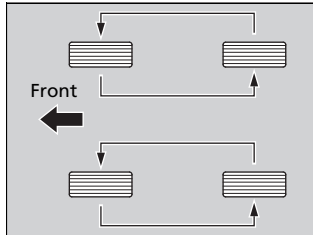
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the multi-information display helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

### ■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

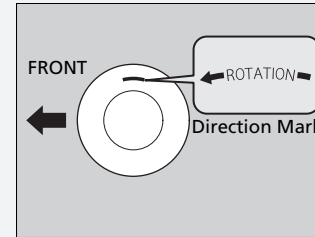
### ■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

### ☒ Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



## Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:

- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

**Cable-type: SCC Super Z-6#SZ 435**

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

### Winter Tires

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

#### **NOTICE**

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

## Checking the Battery

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  - **Entering the audio security code** P. 170
- The clock resets.
  - **Setting the Clock** P. 102
- The navigation system\* is disabled. A PIN code will be required.
  - **Refer to the navigation system manual**

## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

\* Not available on all models

⊗ Battery

### **WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

**WARNING:** Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.

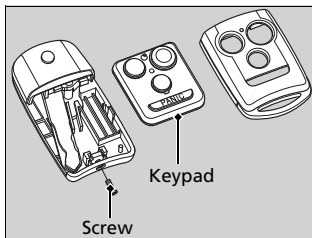
**Wash your hands after handling.**

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Rinse the terminals with water. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

### Replacing the Button Battery

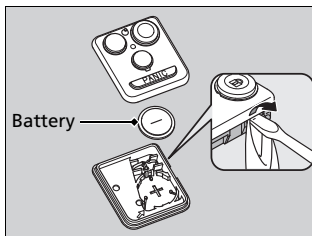
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pushed, replace the battery.

#### Retractable Master Key\*



#### Battery type: CR1616

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver. Push a button to pry open the transmitter.
2. Open the keypad.
  - ▶ Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



#### Replacing the Button Battery

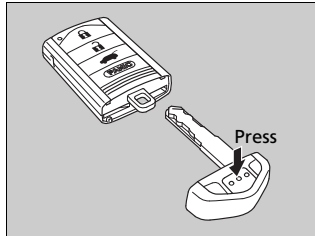
##### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

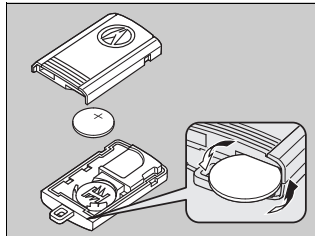


## ■ Keyless Access Remote\*



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



\* Not available on all models

## Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

### ☒ Dust and Pollen Filter

Using an air freshener may reduce the deodorizing effect of the dust and pollen filter, and may reduce its life.

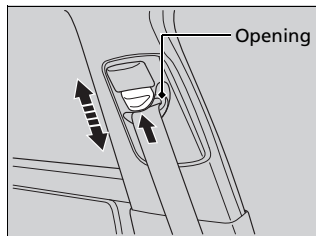
If the airflow from the heating and cooling system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

## Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.  
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.  
Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.  
Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

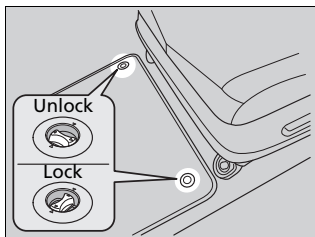
Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them off using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

## Floor Mats



The floor mats hook over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

## Maintaining Genuine Leather

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

## Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Vehicle Wash

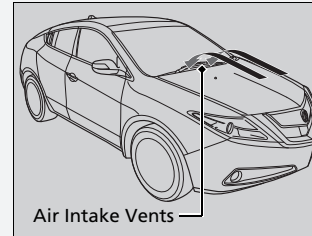
Fold in the door mirrors. Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated vehicle wash.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior. Do not spray water into the engine compartment.

### ⊠ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents or engine compartment. It can cause a malfunction.



## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly. Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminum alloy wheels that helps keep the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing.

## ☒ Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe up spills immediately.

## ☒ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ☒ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

## Tools

Types of Tools..... 318

## If a Tire Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tire..... 319

## Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine..... 326

If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak..... 327

Emergency Engine Stop ..... 328

**Jump Starting**..... 329

**Shift Lever Does Not Move**..... 331

## Overheating

How to Handle Overheating..... 332

## Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On ..... 334

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On ..... 334

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks ..... 335

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On ..... 336

If the ECPS Indicator\* Comes On ..... 336

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks ..... 337

## Fuses

Fuse Locations ..... 338

Circuit Protected and Amps for Each Fuse..... 340

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 343

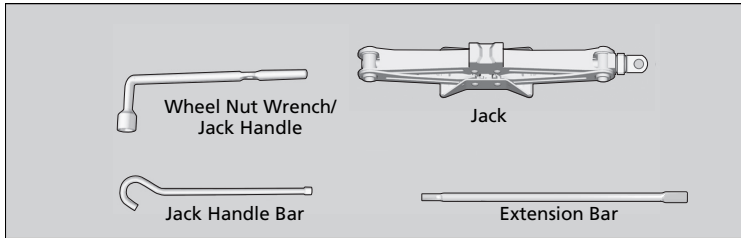
## Emergency Towing

**When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door**..... 346

**When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate**..... 347

\* Not available on all models

## Types of Tools



### Types of Tools

➤ [How to Set Up the Jack P. 323](#)



## Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground.
2. Put the shift lever in **P**.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ✘ Changing a Flat Tire

Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.  
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model.

Do not use them with another vehicle.

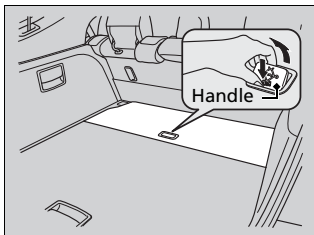
Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire.

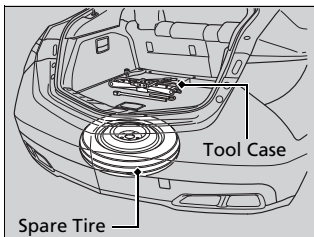
If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent on a flat tire, as it can damage the tire pressure sensor.

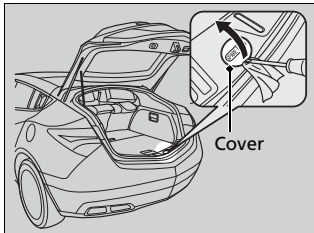
## Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire



1. Push the rear edge of the handle on the front cargo floor lid and open the lid.



2. Take the jack, extension bar, and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.



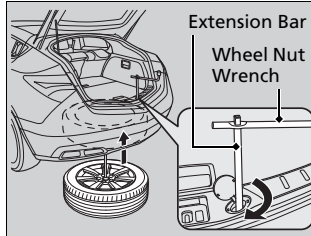
3. Remove the cover on the cargo area lining to access the shaft for the spare tire hoist.

## Changing a Flat Tire

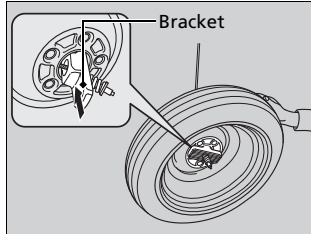
### NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

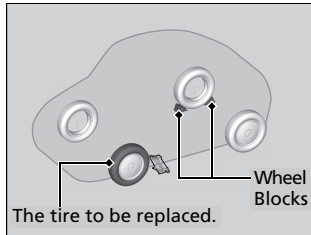
The subwoofer, a large black enclosure, is located on the right side under the lid. Do not store anything in this area. Doing so may compromise vehicle audio performance.



4. Put the extension bar with the wheel nut wrench on the hoist shaft. Turn the wrench to the left to lower the spare tire to the ground.

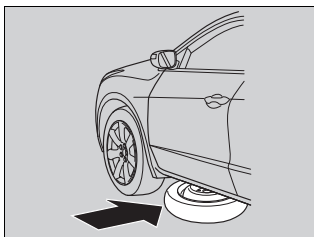


5. Keep turning the wheel nut wrench to create slack in the cable.
6. Remove the bracket from the spare tire.

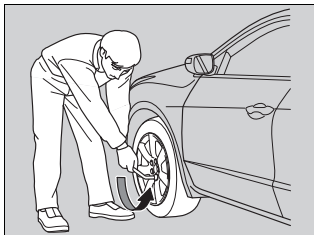


7. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



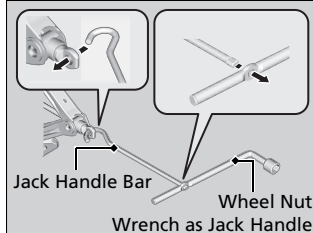
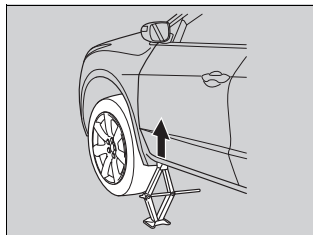
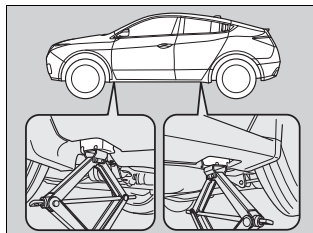


- 8.** Place the compact spare tire (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tire that needs to be replaced.



- 9.** Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket (as shown in the image) clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
  - ▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

## How to Set Up the Jack

### **⚠ WARNING**

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

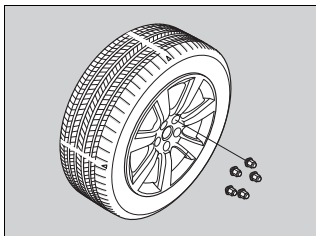
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or their shape may not match.

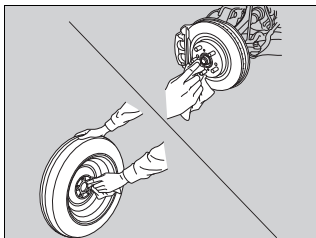
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely.

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

## Replacing the Flat Tire



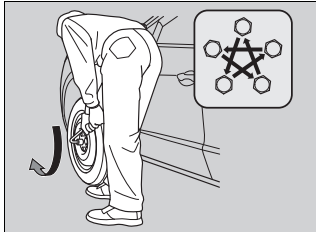
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the compact spare tire.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, and stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

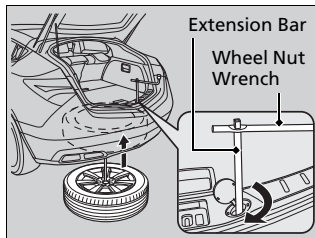
**Wheel nut torque:**

94 lbf-ft (127 N·m, 13 kgf·m)

## Replacing the Flat Tire

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

## Storing the Flat Tire



1. Remove the center cap and place the flat tire face up under the hoist.
2. Insert the hoist bracket into the center hole of the flat tire.
3. Turn the extension bar with the wheel nut wrench clockwise until the flat tire rests against the underbody of the vehicle and you hear the hoist click.
4. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the cargo area.

## TPMS and the Spare Tire

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. **CHECK TPMS SYSTEM** appears on the multi-information display, but this is normal.

If you replace the tire with a specified regular tire, the warning message on the multi-information display and the TPMS indicator will go off after a few miles (kilometers).

## Storing the Flat Tire

### **⚠ WARNING**

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.  
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.


Always raise the spare tire hoist, even if you are not stowing a tire. If the hoist is left down, it will be damaged during driving and need to be replaced.

## TPMS and the Spare Tire

The system cannot monitor the pressure of the spare tire. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure that it is correct.

Use TPMS specific wheels. Each is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem.

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, turn the ignition switch to START <sup>\*1</sup> and check the starter.

### ☒ Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.

☒ **Jump Starting** P. 329

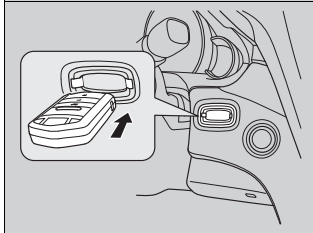
Starter condition	Checklist
<b>Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.</b> The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<b>Check brightness of the interior light.</b> Turn on interior lights and check brightness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ☒ <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 309</li><li>• If the interior lights come on normally ☒ <b>Fuses</b> P. 338</li></ul>
<b>The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.</b> There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<b>Review the engine start procedure.</b> Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ☒ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 223
	<b>Check the immobilizer system indicator.</b> When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ☒ <b>Immobilizer System</b> P. 120
	<b>Check the fuel level.</b> There should be enough fuel in the tank. ☒ <b>Fuel Gauge</b> P. 87
	<b>Check the fuse.</b> Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ☒ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 343
	<b>If the problem continues:</b> ☒ <b>Emergency Towing</b> P. 344

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

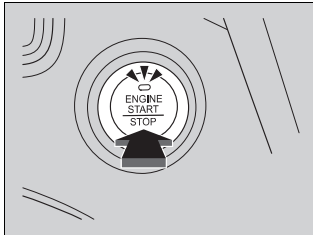


## If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds and the **CHANGE KEYLESS REMOTE BATTERY** message appears on the multi-information display and the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Insert the remote into the keyless access remote slot to set the power mode and start the engine.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
  - ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

### ☒ If the Keyless Access Remote Battery is Weak

Inserting the remote does not charge the remote battery. You should replace the battery as soon as possible.

Models with keyless access remote

## Emergency Engine Stop

If you cannot stop the engine by pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for three seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

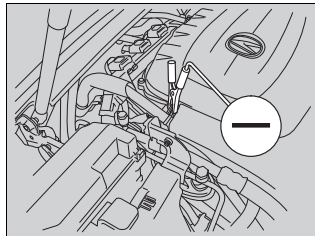
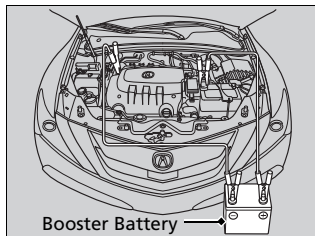
The steering wheel will not lock. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF with the shift lever in **[P]**, and to ACCESSORY with the shift lever in any position other than **[P]**.

### ⊗ Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the assisting vehicle's  $\oplus$  terminal.  
▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the assisting vehicle's  $\ominus$  terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine hanger as shown.  
Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

## Jump Starting

### **⚠ WARNING**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

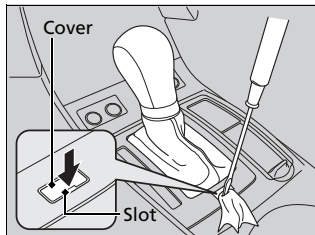
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the assisting vehicle's  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the assisting vehicle's  $\oplus$  terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

## Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

**Models without keyless access remote**

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

**Models with keyless access remote**

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless access remote.

**All models**

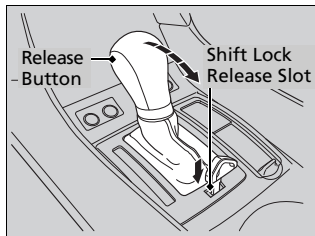
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover of the shift lock release slot.

► Put the tip of the flat-tip screwdriver into the slot and remove it as shown in the image.

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

5. While pushing on the key, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.

► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the **[H]** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam is coming out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
  - ▶ Move the shift lever to **[P]** and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. **No steam coming out:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.  
**Steam coming out:** Turn off the engine and wait until steam goes away. Then, open the hood.

### ☞ How to Handle Overheating

## ⚠ WARNING

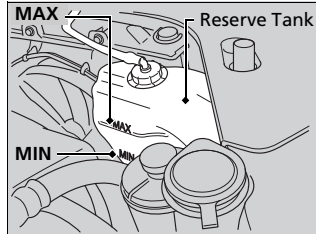
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the **[H]** mark may damage the engine.

### ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle comes down.
  - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

### ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ☒ How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

### If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the indicator comes on**

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about one minute.
2. Open the hood and check the oil level.
  - ▶ Add oil as necessary.
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
  - ▶ The light goes out: Start driving again.
  - ▶ The light does not go out within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

### If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

**NOTICE**

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

#### ☒ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.



## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least ten minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

## Tighten Fuel Cap Message

### ■ The message appears on when:

An evaporative system leak is detected. This may be caused by the fuel fill cap being loose or not being installed.

### ■ What to do when the message appears:

1. Stop the engine.
2. Check that the fuel fill cap is fully installed.
  - ▶ If not, loosen the cap, and then retighten it until it clicks at least once.
3. Drive for several days of normal driving.
  - ▶ The message should go off.

### ■ When the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

Malfunction indicator lamp comes on if the system continues to detect a leak of gasoline vapor. If this happens, check the fuel fill cap using the procedures described above.

### ▶▶ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

U.S.



Canada



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

### ☒ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and ABS indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

## If the ECPS Indicator\* Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with ECPS.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

### ☒ If the ECPS Indicator\* Comes On

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while, the system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, ECPS is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

## If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tire pressure is significantly low. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire has triggered the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full size tire. The indicator goes off after a while.

### ⓘ If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

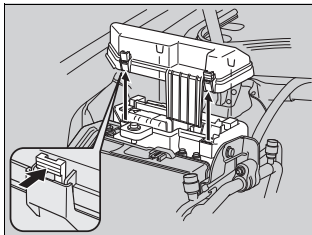
#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

## Fuse Locations

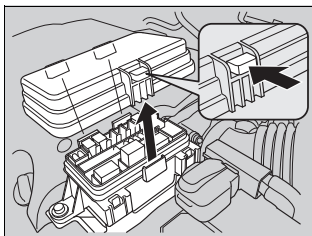
If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1 and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

### Primary Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Located on the passenger's side. Push the tabs to open the box.

### Secondary Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Located next to the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

### Primary Engine Compartment Fuse Box

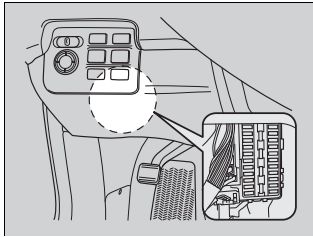
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

### Secondary Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

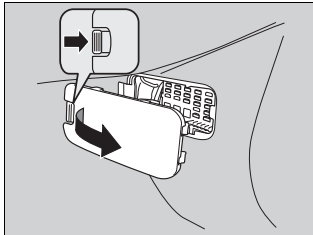
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Driver Side Interior Fuse Box



Located under the dashboard.

### Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box



Located on the lower side panel. Take off the cover to open.

### Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.  
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

### Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.  
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

## Circuit Protected and Amps for Each Fuse

The current rating in brackets indicate that you may find a fuse in the location even if your particular model is not equipped with the device the fuse is used for.

Handling the Unexpected

### Primary Engine Compartment

	Circuits Protected	Amps.
1	Battery	120 A
	Passenger's Side Fuse Box STD	40 A
2	–	–
	–	–
	Headlight Washer*	30 A
	Passenger's Side Fuse Box Option	40 A
	Right e-pretensioner*	30 A
	Left e-pretensioner*	30 A
3	IG Main	50 A
	Sub Fan Motor	40 A
	–	–
	Driver's Fuse Box STD	60 A
	Main Fan Motor	40 A
	Driver's Light Main	30 A
	Wiper Motor	30 A
–	–	
4	Heater Motor	40 A
5	Passenger's Light Main	30 A
6	–	–
7	–	–
8	Rear Defroster	40 A
9	Trailer Turn/Stop Lights	7.5 A
10	Stop & Horn	15 A

	Circuits Protected	Amps.
11	Trailer Small Lights	7.5 A
12	ADS*	30 A
13	IG Coil	15 A
14	FI Sub	15 A
15	Back Up	10 A
16	Interior Light	7.5 A
17	FI Main	15 A
18	DBW	15 A
19	Woofer	15 A
20	MG Clutch	7.5 A
21	Radiator Fan Timer	7.5 A

**Secondary Engine Compartment**

	Circuits Protected	Amps.
1	VSA Motor	40 A
2	VSA FSR	20 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	SH-AWD	30 A
6	Power Tailgate Motor	40 A
7	Tilt Steering Wheel	20 A
8	Telescopic Steering Wheel	20 A
9	Hazard	15 A
10	Headlight Hi/Lo Solenoid	7.5 A
11	Power Management System	7.5 A
12	Smart Accessory*	7.5 A
13	Rear Seat Heaters	20 A
14	Sunshade	20 A
15	Power Tailgate Closer	20 A
16	–	–
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	–	–
21	–	–
22	–	–

**Driver Side Interior**

	Circuits Protected	Amps.
1	Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation/Blind Spot Information*	7.5 A
2	SH-AWD/Headlight Adjuster	7.5 A
3	Washer	20 A
4	Wiper	7.5 A
5	OPDS	7.5 A
6	VSA	7.5 A
7	–	–
8	STRLD	7.5 A
9	Fuel Pump	20 A
10	VB Solenoid	10 A
11	SRS	10 A
12	Meter	7.5 A
13	ACG	15 A
14	–	–
15	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
16	Climate Control System	7.5 A
17	Accessory Key Lock*	7.5 A
18	Accessory	7.5 A
19	Left Power Seat Slide	20 A
20	Panoramic Glass Roof	20 A
21	Left Power Seat Reclining	20 A
22	Rear Left Power Window	20 A

	Circuits Protected	Amps.
23	Accessory Power Socket (Console Box)	15 A
24	Left Front Power Window	20 A
25	Left Door Lock	15 A
26	Left Front Fog Light	10 A
27	Left Small Light (Exterior)	10 A
28	Left Daytime Running Light	10 A
29	TPMS	7.5 A
30	Left Headlight	15 A
31	–	–
32	STS*	7.5 A

Handling the Unexpected

\* Not available on all models

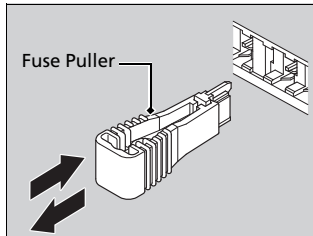
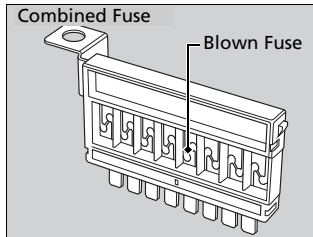
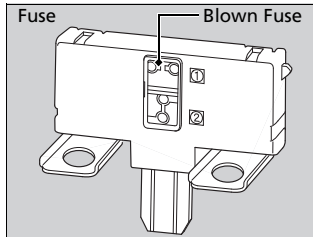
### Passenger Side Interior

	Circuits Protected	Amps.
1	Right Daytime Running Light	10 A
2	Right Small Light (Exterior)	10 A
3	Right Front Fog Light	10 A
4	Right Headlight	15 A
5	–	–
6	Right Small Light (Interior)	7.5 A
7	–	–
8	Right Power Seat Reclining	20 A
9	Right Power Seat Slide	20 A
10	Right Door Lock	10 A
11	Right Rear Power Window	20 A
12	SMART*	10 A
13	Right Front Power Window	20 A
14	–	–
15	Audio Amp	20 A
16	Accessory Power Socket (Center Console)	15 A
17	–	–
18	Power Lumbar	7.5 A
19	Seat Heaters	20 A
20	–	–
21	–	–
22	–	–

Handling the Unexpected



## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.

3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.

► If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.

4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.

► If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### ✕ Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 338

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

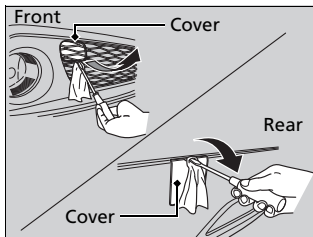
## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the only way you can safely to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Towing Hook

For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on the anchors in the front and rear bumpers.



1. Put cloth on the edge of the cover.

Carefully pry with a small flat-tip screwdriver or a metal fingernail file to remove the cover.

The cover is attached to the bumper with a tether.

## ☒ Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

### NOTICE

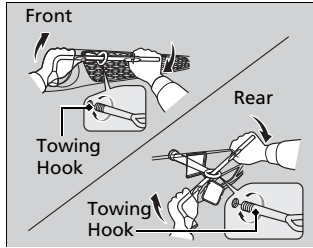
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous, since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

## ☒ Towing Hook

### NOTICE

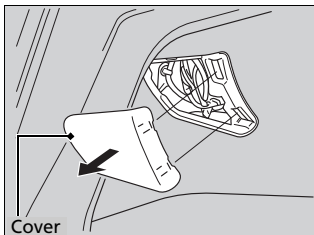
To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. The hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.



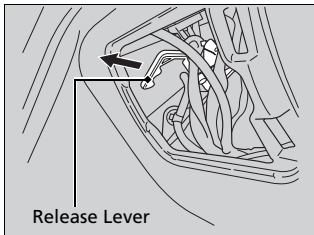
2. Remove the towing hook and wheel wrench placed behind a cover under the cargo area.
3. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench.

## What to Do When Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover.



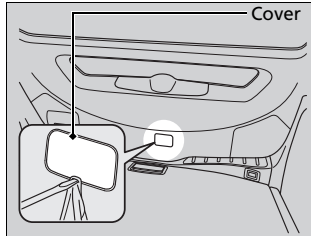
2. Pull the release lever towards you.
  - ▶ The release lever unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

## What to Do When Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

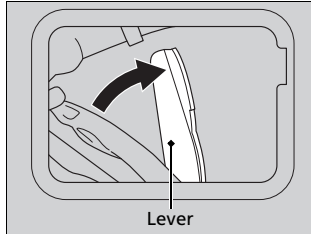
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

## When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate

If you cannot open or close the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right.

## When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate

What to do—Following up

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.





# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	350	<b>Emissions Testing</b>	
<b>Identification Numbers</b>		Testing of Readiness Codes.....	354
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).....	351	<b>Warranty Coverages</b> .....	356
Engine Number and Transmission		<b>Authorized Manuals</b> .....	358
Number.....	351	<b>Client Service Information</b> .....	359
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	352		
<b>Reporting Safety Defects</b> .....	353		

# Specifications

## Vehicle Specifications

Model	Acura ZDX
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
<b>Weights:</b>	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	5,534 lbs (2,510 kg)
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	2,921 lbs (1,325 kg)
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	2,679 lbs (1,215 kg)
Gross Combined Weight* <sup>1</sup>	
Rating (GCWR)	6,593 lbs (2,990 kg)
<b>Air Conditioning:</b>	
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	16.9 – 18.7 oz (480 – 530 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL 8

\*1: The GCWR must be reduced 2 percent for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

## Engine Specifications

Displacement	223.5 cu-in (3,664 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKR7B-11S DENSO SXU22HCR11S

## Fuel

Fuel Type	Premium unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	21.00 US gal (79.5 ℓ)

## Battery

Capacity/Type	55AH(5)/65AH(20)
---------------	------------------

## Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	5.2 US qt (4.9 ℓ)
---------------	-------------------

## Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beam)	35W (D2S)
Daytime Running Lights	60W (HB3)
Fog Lights	55W (H11)
Front Turn Signal/Parking Lights	28/8W (Amber)
Front Side Marker Lights	5W
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W
Rear Side Marker Lights	3 CP
Back-Up Lights	21W
Stop/Taillights	21/5W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear License Plate Lights	5W
Cargo Area Lights	8W
Interior Lights	
Front and Rear Map Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	2W
Door Courtesy Lights	3.4W
Console Compartment Light	1.4W
Glove Box Light	1.4W
Foot Light	LED
Door Inner Handle Light*	LED

## Brake Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3
-----------	------------------------------------

## Transmission Fluid

Specified	Acura ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)
Capacity	Change 3.3 US qt (3.1 ℓ)

## Rear Differential Fluid

Specified	Acura All Wheel Drive Fluid (DPSF)
Capacity	Change 2.67 US qt (2.53 ℓ)

## Transfer Assembly Fluid

Specified	-SAE 90 or SAE 80W-90 Viscosity Hypoid Gear Oil -API Service Classified GL4 or GL5 only
Capacity	Change 0.45 US qt (0.43 ℓ)

## Power Steering Fluid

Specified	Acura Power Steering Fluid
-----------	----------------------------

## Engine Oil

Recommended	-Acura Genuine Motor Oil 5W-20 -API Premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil
Capacity	Change including filter 4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

## Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.77 US gal (6.7 ℓ) (change including the remaining 0.18 US gal (0.675 ℓ) in the reserve tank)

## Tire

	Size	P255/50R19 103H
Regular	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ])	32 (220 [2.2])
Compact Spare	Size Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ])	T165/80D17 104M 60 (420 [4.2])
Wheel Size	Regular Compact Spare	19 x 8.5 J 17 x 4 T

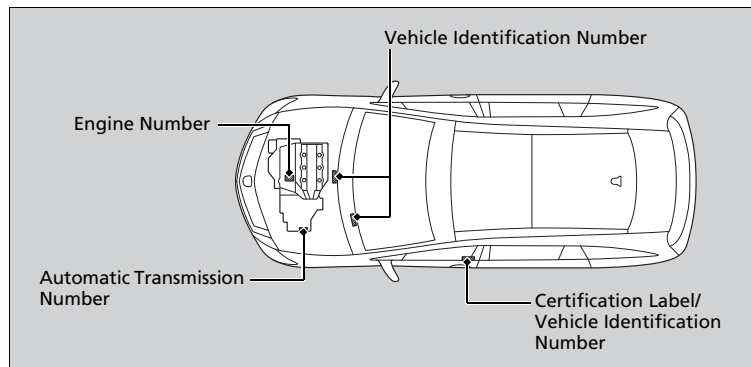


## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. See the image below for the VIN locations.

## Engine Number and Transmission Number

See the image below for the locations of your vehicle's engine number and transmission number.



The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

U.S. AcuraLink

Audio System

Blind Spot Information System

*Bluetooth*® Audio

*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Collision Mitigation Braking System™

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

Immobilizer System

Keyless Access System

Remote Transmitter

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-Gen/210/310. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### In the U.S.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

## Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle uses “readiness codes,” as part of its onboard self diagnostic system. Some states refer to these codes during testing to see if your vehicle’s emissions components are working properly.

The codes may not be read if you go through the testing just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in **[P]**. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in **D**. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

### U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

**New Vehicle Limited Warranty** – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

**Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty** – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

**Seat Belt Limited Warranty** – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

**Rust Perforation Limited Warranty** – all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

**Accessory Limited Warranty** – Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

**Replacement Parts Limited Warranty** – covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

**Replacement Battery Limited Warranty** – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a dealer.

**Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty** – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2012 Acura warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

**Canadian Owners**

Please refer to the 2012 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

## ■ Service Express

For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit [www.techinfo.honda.com](http://www.techinfo.honda.com) for pricing and options.

### U.S. Owners

The publications listed below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

Make an inquiry to Helm Inc. at (800) 782-4356 if you are interested in ordering other models' or other years' manuals.

Publication Form Number	Form Description
61SZN02	2012 Acura ZDX Service Manual
61SZN02EL	2012 Acura ZDX Electrical Troubleshooting Manual
61SZN30	2010 Acura ZDX Body Repair Manual
31SZN620	2012 Acura ZDX Owner's Manual
31SZN820	2012 Acura ZDX Navigation System Owner's Manual
31SZNM20	2012 Acura ZDX Maintenance Journal
31SZNQ20	2012 Acura ZDX Advanced Technology Guide
ACU-R	Order Form for Previous Years- Indicate Year and Model Desired

## Authorized Manuals

### Service Manual:

Covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the journeyman technician, but it is simple enough for most mechanically inclined owners to understand.

### Electrical Troubleshooting Manual:

Complements the Service Manual by providing in-depth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

### Body Repair Manual:

Describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.

### Canadian Owners

Si vous avez besoin d'un Manuel du Conducteur en français, veuillez demander à votre concessionnaire de commander le numéro de pièce 33SZNC20



Acura dealer personnel are trained professionals.

They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's service manager or general manager. If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Acura Client Services.

### U.S. Owners:

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.  
Acura Client Services  
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E 1919 Torrance  
Blvd.  
Torrance, CA 90501-2746  
Tel: (800) 382-2238

### Canadian Owners:

Honda Canada Inc.  
Acura Client Services  
180 Honda Boulevard Markham, ON  
L6C 0H9  
Tel: 1-888-9-ACURA-9  
Fax: 1-877-939-0909  
E-Mail: [ch\\_acura\\_cr@ch.honda.com](mailto:ch_acura_cr@ch.honda.com)

### In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Bella International  
P.O. Box 190816  
San Juan, PR 00919-0816  
Tel: (787) 620-7546

### Client Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number
  - ▣ **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)**  
P. 351
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you



- A**
- ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 255
  - Accessories and Modifications ..... 267
  - Accessory Power Sockets ..... 157
  - Active Head Restraints ..... 148
  - Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ..... 235
  - Additives
    - Coolant ..... 285
    - Engine Oil ..... 280
    - Washer ..... 290
  - Additives, Engine Oil ..... 280
  - Adjusting
    - Armrest ..... 150
    - Front Seats ..... 143
    - Head Restraints ..... 145
    - Mirrors ..... 141
    - Rear Seats ..... 149
    - Steering Wheel ..... 140
    - Temperature ..... 91
  - Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) ..... 163
    - Changing the Mode ..... 163
    - Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ..... 164
    - Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 312
    - Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 163
    - Sensor ..... 166
    - Synchronized Mode ..... 165
    - Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 163
  - Air Pressure ..... 301, 350
  - Airbags ..... 35
    - Advanced Airbags ..... 41
    - After a Collision ..... 30, 39
    - Airbag Care ..... 49
    - Event Data Recorder ..... 19
    - Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 38
    - Indicator ..... 46, 72, 75
    - Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ..... 47
    - Sensors ..... 35
    - Side Airbag Cutoff System ..... 44
    - Side Airbag Off Indicator ..... 48
    - Side Airbags ..... 42
    - Side Curtain Airbags ..... 45
  - AM/FM Radio ..... 173
  - Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 255
    - Indicator ..... 71
  - Armrest ..... 150
  - Audio Remote Controls ..... 190
  - Audio System ..... 168
    - Adjusting the Sound ..... 172
    - Auxiliary Input Jack ..... 169
    - Error Messages ..... 188
    - General Information ..... 191
    - MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 183
    - Reactivating ..... 170
    - Recommended CDs ..... 192
    - Recommended Devices ..... 194
    - Remote Controls ..... 190
    - Security Code ..... 170
    - Theft Protection ..... 170
    - USB Adapter Cable ..... 169
  - USB Flash Drives ..... 194
  - Authorized Manuals ..... 358
  - Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 113
  - Automatic Lighting ..... 132
  - Automatic Transmission ..... 227
    - Creeping ..... 227
    - Fluid ..... 287
    - Kickdown ..... 227
    - Operating the Shift Lever ..... 13, 229, 231
    - Sequential Shift Mode ..... 230
    - Shift Lever Does Not Move ..... 331
    - Shifting ..... 228
  - Auxiliary Input Jack ..... 169
  - Average Fuel Economy ..... 91
  - Average Speed ..... 92
- B**
- Battery ..... 309
    - Charging System Indicator ..... 69, 334
    - Jump Starting ..... 329
    - Maintenance (Checking the Battery) ..... 309
    - Maintenance (Replacing) ..... 310
  - Belts (Seat) ..... 27
  - Beverage Holders ..... 156
  - Blind Spot Information (BSI) ..... 246
  - Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® ..... 197
  - Bluetooth® Audio ..... 186
  - Booster Seats (For Children) ..... 63
  - Brake System ..... 253
    - Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 255

Brake Assist System .....	256	<b>Child Safety</b> .....	50	<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	285
Fluid .....	288	Childproof Door Locks.....	112	Adding to the Radiator .....	286
Foot Brake .....	254	<b>Child Seat</b> .....	50	Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	285
Indicator .....	68, 336	Booster Seats .....	63	Overheating.....	332
Parking Brake .....	253	Child Seat for Infants.....	52	Temperature Gauge.....	87
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)</b> ....	136	Child Seat for Small Children.....	53	<b>Creeping</b> .....	227
<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	291	Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt.....	58	<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	232
Back-Up Lights.....	296	Larger Children .....	62	Indicator .....	77
Daytime Running Light .....	294	Rear-facing Child Seat.....	52	<b>Cup Holders</b> .....	156
Fog Lights.....	292	Selecting a Child Seat.....	54	<b>Customized Features</b> .....	94
Front Side Marker Lights.....	293	Using a Tether.....	60		
Front Turn Signal/Parking Lights.....	293	<b>Childproof Door Locks</b> .....	112	<b>D</b>	
Headlights .....	291	Cleaning the Exterior .....	315	<b>Daytime Running Lights</b> .....	133
High-Mount Brake Light .....	297	<b>Cleaning the Interior</b> .....	313	<b>Dead Battery</b> .....	329
Rear License Plate Light.....	297	<b>Client Service Information</b> .....	359	<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	352
Side Turn Signal/ Emergency Indicator Lights .....	294	<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	163	<b>Dimming</b>	
Stop Light, Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Lights.....	295	Changing the Mode .....	163	Headlights .....	131
<b>Bulb Specifications</b> .....	350	Defrosting the Windshield and Windows.....	164	Rearview Mirror .....	141
		Dust and Pollen Filter.....	312	<b>Dipstick (Engine Oil)</b> .....	281
		Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	163	<b>Directional Signals (Turn Signal)</b> .....	131
		Sensor.....	166	<b>Door Mirrors</b> .....	142
		Synchronized Mode.....	165	<b>Doors</b> .....	103
		Using Automatic Climate Control .....	166	Auto Door Locking.....	113
		<b>Clock</b> .....	102	Auto Door Unlocking.....	113
<b>C</b>		<b>Coat Hook</b> .....	158	Door and Tailgate Open Indicator .....	26, 73
<b>Carbon Monoxide Gas</b> .....	64	<b>Compact Spare Tire</b> .....	319, 350	Keys.....	103
<b>Cargo Hooks</b> .....	158	<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	154	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside.....	111
<b>Carrying Cargo</b> .....	211, 213	<b>Controls</b> .....	101	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside.....	106
<b>CD Changer</b> .....	177				
<b>Certification Label</b> .....	351				
<b>Changing Bulbs</b> .....	291				
<b>Charging System Indicator</b> .....	69, 334				

Lockout Prevention System .....	107
DOT Tire Quality Grading.....	303
<b>Driving</b> .....	209
Automatic Transmission .....	227
Braking .....	253
Cruise Control .....	232
Shifting Gear .....	228
Starting the Engine .....	223
Driving Position Memory System .....	138
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	312

## E

ECPS (Electric Controlled Power Steering System).....	73, 336
Elapsed Time .....	92
Electric Controlled Power Steering System (ECPS) .....	
Indicator .....	73, 336
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) .....	243
Emergency .....	344
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) .....	354
<b>Engine</b> .....	351
Coolant .....	285
Jump Starting .....	329
Oil .....	280
Starting.....	223
Switch Buzzer .....	127
<b>Engine Coolant</b> .....	285
Adding to the Radiator .....	286
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	285

Overheating .....	332
Temperature Gauge .....	87
<b>Engine Oil</b> .....	280
Adding .....	282
Checking.....	281
Displaying Oil Life .....	273
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	68, 334
Recommended Engine Oil.....	280
<b>Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)</b> ..	64
<b>Exterior Care (Cleaning)</b> .....	315
<b>Exterior Mirrors</b> .....	142

## F

<b>Features</b> .....	167
<b>Filters</b> .....	
Dust and Pollen .....	312
Oil .....	283
<b>Flat Tire</b> .....	319
<b>Floor Mats</b> .....	314
<b>Fluids</b> .....	
Automatic Transmission.....	287
Brake.....	288
Engine Coolant.....	285
Windshield Washer.....	290
<b>Fog Light Indicator</b> .....	75
<b>Folding Down the Rear Seats</b> .....	149
<b>Foot Brake</b> .....	254
<b>Front Airbags (SRS)</b> .....	38
<b>Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation</b> .....	161

<b>Front Seats</b> .....	143
Adjusting .....	143
<b>Fuel</b> .....	14, 263
Economy .....	266
Gauge.....	87
Instant Fuel Economy .....	92
Low Fuel Indicator .....	71
Range .....	92
Recommendation .....	263
Refueling.....	263
<b>Fuel Economy</b> .....	266
<b>Fuel Fill Cap</b> .....	14, 265
Message.....	335
<b>Fuel Fill Door</b> .....	14, 264
<b>Fuses</b> .....	
Locations.....	338

## G

<b>Gasoline (Fuel)</b> .....	
Economy .....	266
Gauge.....	87
Information .....	263
Instant Fuel Economy .....	92
Low Fuel Indicator .....	71
Refueling.....	263
<b>Gauges</b> .....	87
<b>Gear Shift Lever Positions</b> .....	
Automatic Transmission .....	228
<b>Glass (care)</b> .....	316
<b>Glove Box</b> .....	153

**H**

Halogen Bulbs .....	292
Handling the Unexpected .....	317
HandsFreeLink® (HFL) .....	197
Help Features .....	198
HFL Buttons .....	197
HFL Menus .....	199
Information Display .....	198
Making a Call .....	203
Muting a Call .....	204
Phone Setup .....	201
Phonebook .....	205
Receiving a Call .....	204
Sending Numbers or Names During a Call .....	204
Transferring a Call .....	204
Hazard Warning Button .....	2
Head Restraints .....	145
Headlights .....	131
Aiming .....	291
Automatic Operation .....	132
Dimming .....	131, 133
Operating .....	131
Heaters (Seat) .....	160, 161, 162
HFL (HandsFreeLink®) .....	197
High-Beam Indicator .....	75
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver .....	195

**I**

Identification Numbers .....	351
Engine and Transmission .....	351
Vehicle Identification .....	351
Ignition Switch .....	127
Illumination Control .....	136
Button .....	136
Immobilizer System .....	120
Indicator .....	76
Indicators .....	68
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	71
Active Damper System .....	73
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) .....	78, 235
Charging System .....	69, 334
CRUISE CONTROL .....	77, 233
CRUISE MAIN .....	77, 232
Door and Tailgate Open .....	26, 73
ECPS (Electric Controlled Power Steering) System .....	73, 336
Fog Light .....	75
High-Beam .....	75
Immobilizer System .....	76
Keyless Access System .....	77
Lights On .....	75
Low Fuel .....	71
Low Oil Pressure .....	68, 334
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS .....	74, 248, 250
Maintenance Minder .....	273
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	69, 335
Parking Brake and Brake System .....	68, 336
Seat Belt Reminder .....	28, 71

Security System Alarm .....	76
SH-AWD® .....	77, 245
Shift Position .....	70
Side Airbag Off .....	48, 75
Supplemental Restraint System .....	46, 72
System Message .....	74
Transmission .....	70
Turn Signal .....	75
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) System .....	72, 243
VSA® OFF .....	72, 244
Information .....	349
Information Buttons .....	88
Instant Fuel Economy .....	92
Instrument Panel .....	67
Brightness Control .....	136
Integrated Dynamics System (IDS) .....	252
Interior Lights .....	151
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	141

**J**

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) .....	323
Jump Starting .....	329

**K**

Key Number Tag .....	105
Keyless Access System .....	108
Keyless Lockout Prevention .....	107

Keys.....	103
Lockout Prevention .....	107
Number Tag.....	105
Rear Door Won't Open .....	112
Remote Transmitter .....	106
Types and Functions.....	103
Valet Key .....	105
Won't Turn .....	17
Kickdown.....	227

## L

LATCH (Child Seats) .....	55
Lights .....	131, 291
Automatic.....	132
Bulb Replacement.....	291
Daytime Running Lights .....	133
Fog Lights .....	133
High-Beam Indicator .....	75
Interior.....	151
Light Switches.....	131
Lights On Indicator.....	75
Turn Signals .....	131
Load Limits .....	213
Locking/Unlocking .....	103
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	113
Childproof Door Locks .....	112
From Inside .....	111
From Outside .....	106
Keys.....	103
Using a Key.....	107, 108

Lockout Prevention System.....	107
Low Battery Charge.....	334
Low Fuel Indicator .....	71
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	68, 334
Lower Anchors.....	55
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) .....	213

## M

Maintenance .....	269
Battery .....	309
Brake.....	288
Cleaning.....	313
Climate Control.....	312
Coolant .....	285
Maintenance Minder™ .....	273
Oil .....	281
Precautions.....	270
Radiator .....	286
Remote Transmitter .....	310
Replacing Light Bulbs.....	291
Safety.....	271
Service Items .....	275
Tires .....	300
Transmission Fluid .....	287
Under the Hood .....	277
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	69, 335
Map Lights .....	152
Maximum Load Limit .....	213
Meters, Gauges.....	87

Mirrors .....	141
Adjusting .....	141
Door .....	142
Exterior .....	142
Interior Rearview .....	141
Modifications (and Accessories) .....	267
MP3 .....	177, 183
Multi-Information Display .....	88

## N

Numbers (Identification).....	351
-------------------------------	-----

## O

Odometer .....	90
Oil (Engine).....	280
Adding.....	282
Checking.....	281
Displaying Oil Life.....	273
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	68, 334
Recommended Engine Oil .....	280
Viscosity .....	280
Opening/Closing .....	
Hood.....	278
Panoramic Glass Roof.....	126
Power Windows.....	123
Tailgate.....	114, 347
Outside Temperature Display.....	91
Overheating.....	332

**P**

Paddle Shifters (Sequential Shift Mode) .....	230
Panic Mode .....	122
Panoramic Glass Roof .....	126
Parking .....	261
Parking Brake .....	253
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator .....	68, 336
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator .....	47
Passing Indicators .....	131
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	186
Power Windows .....	123
Precautions While Driving .....	226
Rain .....	226
Pregnant Women .....	33
Puncture (Tire) .....	319

**R**

Radiator .....	286
Radio (AM/FM) .....	173
Radio Data System (RDS) .....	174
Range .....	92
RDS (Radio Data System) .....	174
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) .....	354
Rear Defogger/ Heated Door Mirror Button .....	137
Rear Seat Heaters .....	162
Rear Seats (Folding Down) .....	149
Rearview Mirror .....	141

Rearview Mirror with Rearview Camera Display .....	262
Refueling .....	263
Fuel Gauge .....	87
Gasoline .....	263, 350
Low Fuel Indicator .....	71
Regulations .....	250, 303, 352
Remote Transmitter .....	106
Replacement Battery .....	310
Bulbs .....	291
Fuses .....	338
Tires .....	306
Wiper Blade Rubber .....	298
Reporting Safety Defects .....	353
Resetting a Trip Meter .....	91
Reverse Tilt Door Mirror .....	142

**S**

Safe Driving .....	21
Safety Check .....	26
Safety Labels .....	65
Safety Message .....	20
Seat Belt e-pretensioners .....	30
Seat Belts .....	27
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor .....	32
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners .....	29
Checking .....	34
e-pretensioners .....	30
Fastening .....	31

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt .....	58
Pregnant Women .....	33
Reminder .....	28
Warning Indicator .....	28, 71
Seat Heaters .....	160, 161, 162
Seats .....	143
Adjusting .....	143
Front Seats .....	143
Rear Seats .....	149
Seat Heaters .....	160, 161, 162
Security System .....	120
Immobilizer System Indicator .....	76
Security System Alarm Indicator .....	76
SEL/RESET Button .....	88
Select Lever .....	13, 228
Operation .....	13, 229, 230, 231
Releasing .....	331
Won't Move .....	331
Selecting a Child Seat .....	54
Selector Knob (Audio) .....	171
Sequential Shift Mode .....	230
Setting the Clock .....	102
SH-AWD® .....	245
Indicator .....	77
Shift Lever .....	13, 228
Shift Position Indicator .....	70, 229
Shifting .....	228
Shoulder Anchor .....	32
Side Airbags .....	42
Cutoff System .....	44



Off Indicator .....	44
Side Curtain Airbags .....	45
Side Storage Compartment .....	155
Snow Tires .....	308
Spare Tire .....	319, 350
Spark Plugs .....	350
Specifications .....	350
Specified Fuel .....	263, 350
Speedometer .....	87
SRS Airbags (Airbags) .....	38
Starting the Engine .....	223
Does Not Start .....	326
Engine Switch Buzzer .....	127
Jump Starting .....	329
Steering Wheel .....	140
Adjusting .....	140
Stopping .....	261
Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) System .....	245
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) .....	38
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) .....	2, 3, 127
SYNC Mode .....	165
System Message Indicator .....	74

## T

Tachometer .....	87
Tailgate .....	114
Unable to Open .....	347

## Temperature

Outside Temperature Display .....	91
Temperature Sensor .....	166
Time (Setting) .....	102

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

(TPMS) .....	248
Indicator .....	74, 337
Tires .....	300
Air Pressure .....	301, 350
Checking and Maintaining .....	300
Compact Spare Tire .....	319
Inspection .....	300
Labeling .....	301
Puncture (Flat Tire) .....	319
Regulations .....	303
Rotation .....	307
Tire Chains .....	308
Wear Indicators .....	305
Winter .....	308

## Tools .....

Towing a Trailer .....	215
Equipment and Accessories .....	216
Load Limits .....	215
Towing Your Vehicle .....	219
Emergency .....	344

## TPMS

(Tire Pressure Monitoring System) .....	248
Indicator .....	74, 337

## Transmission

Automatic .....	228
Fluid .....	287

Number .....	351
Sequential Shift Mode .....	230
Shift Position Indicator .....	70, 229
Trip Meter .....	91
Troubleshooting .....	317
Blown Fuse .....	338
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	17
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	18
Emergency Towing .....	344
Engine Won't Start .....	326
Noise When Braking .....	18
Overheating .....	332
Premium Gasoline .....	263, 350
Puncture/Flat Tire .....	319
Rear Door Won't Open .....	17, 112
Select Lever Won't Move .....	331
Warning Indicators .....	68
Turn Signals .....	131
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	75

## U

Under-floor Storage Area .....	155
Unlocking the Doors .....	106
USB Adapter Cable .....	168, 169
USB Flash Drives .....	194

## V

Valet Key .....	105
Vanity Mirrors .....	5

Vehicle Identification Number.....	351	Wipers and Washers.....	134
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®).....	243	Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades.....	298
Off Button.....	244	<b>WMA</b> .....	177, 183
Off Indicator.....	72	<b>Worn Tires</b> .....	300
System Indicator.....	72		
Viscosity (Oil).....	280, 350		
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist).....	243		

## X

XM® Radio.....	175
----------------	-----

## W

Warning and Information Messages.....	80
Warning Indicator On/Blinking.....	334
Warning Labels.....	65
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately).....	356
Watts.....	350
Wear Indicators (Tire).....	305
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle).....	323
Window Washers.....	134
Adding/Refilling Fluid.....	290
Switch.....	134
Windows (Opening and Closing).....	123
Windshield.....	134
Cleaning.....	316
Washer Fluid.....	290
Wiper Blades.....	298
Wipers and Washers.....	134
Winter Tires.....	308
Snow Tires.....	308
Tire Chains.....	308